

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

Welcome

Before embarking on the journey of Lotus, it is recommended that you read the vehicle's user manual to understand all the information required for vehicle use; The more you know about this car, the more it will help you familiarize yourself with driving skills, enjoy driving safety and fun, maintain good vehicle condition, and maintain better performance. In this manual, there are certain configuration contents described with a "*" symbol. If there are differences with the vehicle you purchased, please refer to the actual vehicle. Lotus Cars reserves the right to make changes, supplements, or terminations to the content and technical specifications of this manual at all times. This manual only describes the basic information of the vehicle, basic operations for use, and corresponding precautions and warnings.

Welcome to the Lotus family.

Table of Contents

Introduction		Using the seat belts correctly
		Airbag introduction · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
User notice Prompts and illustrations Vehicle scrapping Vehicle accessories Event data recorder (EDR) Contact Lotus OTA system upgrade Radio information Tire introduction	12 13 13 14 14 15 15 16	Function of airbag Location of airbag Airbag deployment conditions Disabling of passenger front airbag Children in car Child passenger safety guide Child safety seat Child safety lock Life detection and care Lotus security system V
Overview		Device
Front of vehicle Rear of vehicle Internal	23 23 24	Charging Charging cable Charging preparation
Safety		Charging guidance
Seat belt	28	Key introduction
ocat ben		50013
Function of seat belt	28	Windows · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

Steering wheel 90 Panoramic sunroof* Adjustment of steering wheel 90 Wireless device charging Buttons on steering wheel 90 Car power Steering wheel heating 93 USB-C port Combination instrument 94 12V power supply	Bonnet ·····	82	Four-zone air-conditioner control system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Adjustment of steering wheel 90 Wireless device charging 90 Buttons on steering wheel 90 Car power 90 Steering wheel heating 93 USB-C port 94 12V power supply	Tailgate ·····	84	Air outlet · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Buttons on steering wheel 90 Car power Steering wheel heating 93 USB-C port 12V power supply	Steering wheel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	90	Panoramic sunroof* ·····
Steering wheel heating	Adjustment of steering wheel	90	Wireless device charging
Combination instrument	Buttons on steering wheel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	90	Car power · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Steering wheel heating	93	USB-C port · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Instrument overview · · · · · · · 94 Sun visors and vanity mirrors · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Combination instrument	94	12V power supply · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Instrument overview	94	Sun visors and vanity mirrors
Indicators and warning lamps	Indicators and warning lamps ·····	98	Storage device ·····
Head-up display (HUD) · · · · · 104 Center armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Head-up display (HUD)	104	Center armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Lighting	Lighting	107	Front centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
External lighting control · · · · · 107 Rear centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	External lighting control	107	Rear centre armrest · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Internal lighting control · · · · · 113 Towing mode* · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Internal lighting control · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	113	Towing mode*
Wiper control · · · · 117 Parking comfort · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Wiper control · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	117	Parking comfort · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Wing mirror adjustment	Wing mirror adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	120	Drive
Outside mirror adjustment · · · · · · 120	Outside mirror adjustment	120	
Inside mirror adjustment · · · · · · · · · 130	Inside mirror adjustment	130	Before you drive · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Garage door opener(Homel ink)* · · · · · · · · · · · · · 131	Garage door opener(HomeLink)* · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	131	Drive
Seat	Seat ·····	133	Power on/off · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Front seat adjustment	Front seat adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	133	Start
Poar soat adjustment	Rear seat adjustment · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	138	Shift operation
Seat heating	Seat heating · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	145	Ejection start*
Seat ventilation* ···················· 147	Seat ventilation*	147	Acoustic vehicle alerting system
Air conditioner ····································	Air conditioner · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	148	Active rear spoiler*

Air suspension · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	201	Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	253
Drive mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	204	Door opening warning (DOW) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	255
Steering mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	207	Brake assist system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	257
Driving mode · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	207	Comfortable brake stop (CST)	257
Active grille shutter (AGS)	208	Electronic stability control (ESC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	258
Tyre pressure monitoring system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	209	Traction control system (TCS)	260
Safe parking · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	211	Hill descent control (HDC)	260
Braking system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	212	Brake assist system (BAS)	262
Energy recovery ·····	212	Anti roll-over program (ARP)	262
AUTO HOLD	213	Hill start assist (HSA)	262
Electronic parking brake(EPB) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	214	Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	263
Intelligent driving system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	214	Electrical pad wear indication (EPWI) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	263
Sensors and cameras · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	214	Post impact control (PIC)	265
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	219	Park assist system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	265
Highway assist (HWA)*	227	Parking assist (PA)*	265
Forward drive assist · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	235	Visual parking assist (VPA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	267
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	235	Autonomous parking assist (APA)* ······	269
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*	239	Remote parking assist (RPA)* ·····	273
Front cross traffic alert (FCTA)	241	Driver fatigue detection	275
Lane keep assist (LKA)	243	LOTUS HYPER OS	
Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	246		
Rear drive assist	250	Notes to users	280
Rear collision warning (RCW)	250	Central screen display	282
Blind spot detection (BSD)	252	Start-up guidance	282
		otal c ap guidance	202

Desktop ·····	283	Change of ownership · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	321
Shortcut panel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	283	Record of ownership change · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	322
Garage ·····	284	Service record · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	324
Vehicle use preference function	285	Storage and maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	327
Network settings · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	285	Battery	328
Bluetooth settings ·····	287	Tyre information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	330
Android Auto	287	Tyre wear ·····	330
Apple CarPlay · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	290	Seasonal tyre · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	331
System application · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	293	Tyre chains · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	331
Multimedia · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	293	Checking under the hood of the front compartment · · · · · ·	332
Sound ·····	295	Coolant ·····	332
Voice	295	Brake fluid · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	333
Phone ·····	298	Windscreen washer fluid · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	334
Navigation ·····	300	Pollen filter · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	335
Set up ·····	305	Inspection and replacement of wiper blade strip · · · · · · · · ·	336
OTA system upgrade operation · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	309	Exterior maintenance	337
Pear display · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	313	Interior maintenance · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	340
Maintenance		Precautions during the run-in period · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	343
Maintenance		Emergency	
lecessity of maintenance	317		
Daily maintenance	317	Guidance for traffic accidents	346
cheduled maintenance	318	Emergency call	346
Varranty coverage · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	319	Hazard warning device	349
Varranty period · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	319	Hazard warning lights	349
variality period	317	riazaru wariiiiy iiyiits	349

Warning triangle · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	349
Reflective vests · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	349
High voltage system information · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	350
Vehicle lifting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	357
Jump starting · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	358
Replace fuse · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	360
Driver's tools	374
Quick temporary tyre repair	374
Having your car towed · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	378
Towing method · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	378
Towing procedures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	378
Emergency rescue procedures · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	381
PPE for rescue personnel · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	381
Release method of high-voltage system · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	383
No cutting areas	384
Rescue of wading vehicle · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	386
Rescue of vehicle or fire	386
Data	
Vehicle identification · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	390
Vehicle nameplate · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	390
VIN location · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	390
How to read VIN · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	391
Drive motor model and number · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	392

Microwave window · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	393
Technical parameter · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	394
Dimension parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	394
Performance parameters	394
Drive motor parameters	394
Weight parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	395
High voltage battery parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	396
Seat parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	396
Wheel alignment parameters	397
Rim and tyre specifications	398
Braking parameters · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	399
Fluid specification and capacity	400





User notice

This vehicle is an electric vehicle. Please follow the relevant warnings and instructions in the user manual (hereinafter referred to as this manual) during daily driving and maintenance to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.

Please read this manual carefully before using the vehicle for the first time to get a preliminary understanding of your vehicle. Please be sure to maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance information shown in this manual. If any abnormality is found during use, please contact your Lotus retailer in time.

The copyright of this manual is owned by Lotus. No part of this manual may be reproduced or duplicated without the prior written consent of the company.

This guide provides an overview of the vehicle's main features and controls, some of which are for reference only and may not belong to the vehicle. All the contents of the manual are the latest version. However, with the continuous update and optimization of the product by Lotus, your vehicle may differ from the description and images in this manual. Lotus reserves the right to make changes without notice, please read the E-manual in the central screen display (CSD) or mobile APP for the latest version of the handbook. The content, data, images, and explanations of this manual cannot be used as legal basis.

Your vehicle is equipped with a number of advanced driver assistance systems (ADAS) to provide an extra measure of safety. However, the ADAS are installed only to assist the driver. ADAS should not be solely relied upon or over-relied upon as they may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (as explained in the ADAS section of this handbook). The ADAS are not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times, watching the road with hands on the steering wheel. The driver shall be ready to take action and brake if neccessary, closely paying attention to the task of driving, and driving in a careful and responsible manner.

Warranty and maintenance information is also contained in this manual.

You can scan the quick response (QR) code to download the mobile APP.



Prompts and illustrations

Prompt information

⚠ Warning!

Risk of personal injury or death

Used with the safety alert symbol, indicates a risk of death or serious injury for the driver, other vehicle occupants, other road users or bystanders.

L Caution!

Risk of vehicle damage

Messages are intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property or the environment.

① Note!

Helpful notes

Messages are intended to assist or guide the reader to other sources of information.

Illustration information

Symbols used in pictures or text of this manual:

- 01: indicates the object and position.
- : indicates the specific position.
- : indicates a turning action.
- indicates the direction of motion.
- *: indicates that the described configuration is optional.

Vehicle scrapping

Vehicles or vehicle components that experience the following situations shall be scrapped in accordance with national environmental protection regulations and safety measures:

- Reached service life.
- No longer suitable for road use.

The disposal of scrapped vehicles or their components requires specific safety measures, such as the disposal of flammable and explosive components or high-voltage systems. Therefore, only authorized equipment can be used to handle scrapped vehicles or components.

⚠ Warning!

 Only authorized scrapped vehicle processing equipment can be used to handle scrapped vehicles or their components. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer. Batteries and high voltage batteries need to be handled by authorized processing agencies. When processing is required, please contact Lotus retailer.

High voltage battery recycling

The Lotus retailer will check the capacity and condition of the high voltage battery. The high voltage battery shall be recycled in accordance with applicable laws and regulations and combined with the market conditions at that time.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not dispose of or discard the used high voltage batteries to avoid accidental fire or serious pollution to the environment.
- Do not hand over the used power batteries to other organizations or individuals. You will bear the corresponding responsibilities for environmental pollution or safety accidents caused by disassembling the power batteries without consent.
- If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a delayed risk of fire. In this case, it is necessary to place the vehicle or the damaged battery under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area so as to prevent the start of a fire.

Vehicle accessories

Lotus parts and accessories have been produced to ensure their safety and suitability for your vehicle. To ensure the reliability, comfort, and handling of the vehicle, Lotus recommends using original parts and accessories.

⚠ Warning!

Do not modify the vehicle or fit any unapproved accessories, as this may affect the manoeuvrability, safety or durability of the vehicle, and may violate local government regulations. Lotus will not be held responsible for any vehicle damage, performance problems or safety accidents caused by unauthorized modifications.

Event data recorder (EDR)

The event data recorder (EDR) can automatically record the vehicle operation information and the status information of vehicle safety systems within a period of time before and after an event, such as:

- Vehicle speed;
- Whether the brake pedal is depressed;
- Longitudinal acceleration;
- Driver seat belt status;

- Percentage of accelerator pedal position and fully open position;
- Power-on cycle in the event;
- Power-on cycle in reading;
- Complete status of event data record;
- Time interval between this event and the last event.

Collecting and analysing the vehicle status data recorded by the EDR can help to understand the relevant situation before and after the event.

The data recorded by the EDR needs to be collected using special diagnostic equipment connected to the vehicle. If necessary, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for this equipment.

Lotus may use the data recorded by the EDR for engineering research, which will help Lotus to continuously improve product quality and safety. The data recorded by the EDR will not be disclosed to third parties except in the following cases:

- With the owner's consent;
- In compliance with the requirements of administrative and judicial authorities;
- In accordance with laws and regulations.

Contact Lotus

If you encounter any problems when using the car, you can contact us by scanning the following two-dimensional code:



You can also visit the website: qr.lotuscars/contact-centre

Lotus Cars Europe B.V.

Johan Huizingalaan 400 A 1066JS Amsterdam the Netherlands.

OTA system upgrade

Over-the-air (OTA) software upgrades are provided to enhance or improve existing vehicle systems and may provide new features or functionality. Lotus recommends that you should upgrade your car as soon as possible after receiving an upgrade notification message.

Please refer to ${\bf OTA}$ system upgrade operation (p.309) for specific operation and introduction.

Radio information

The relevant information of radio electronic components of this vehicle is listed below:

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
Tyre pressure monitoring sensor	433.92 MHz	0.00012W	Schrader electronics Itd	11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim, Northern Ireland, BT41 1QS, UK.
TCAM	698 Mhz-5 GHz	1W	Neusoft Group (Dalian) Co.,Ltd.	No.901-7 Huangpu Road, Ganjingzi District, Dalian City, Liaoning P.R. China

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
Side obstacle detection radar	76GHz-77G Hz	50dbm	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High-tech Innovation Park, East District of Economic & Technologi cal Developme nt Zone, Wuhu, China
FM amplifier	A.FM: 87.5- 108MHz B.DAB: 174.0- 240MHz	1.5W	Fuba automotive electronics (Suzhou) Co., LTD.	Building 16 No.859 Pangjin Road, Wujiang Economics & Technologi cal Developme nt Zone Jiangsu Province, China 215200

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
Occupation detection radar	60GHz-64 GHz	20dbm	WHST CO., LTD.	Factory 1, Wanchun High-thch Innovation Park, East District of Economic & Technologi cal Developme nt Zone, Wuhu, Anhui, China
Flat antenna	A.5G: 698- 960MHz; 1,710- 2690MHz; 3,300- 5,000MHz; B.GNSS: 1,561- 1,605MHz; C.WIFI: 2,400- 2,500MHz; 5,150- 5850MHz;	2W	Shanghai rian antenna Co., LTD	No.376, Lane 1555, Jinshajiang West Road,Jiang qiao Town, Jiading District, Shanghai

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
	D.TPMS: 434±1MHz			
BLE and NFC communica tion module	2.4GHz Bluetooth	10dbm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss- str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
Ultra wide band antenna	6-8GHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss- str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
NFC reader	13.56MHz	2W	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss- str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
Key fob	2.4GHz, 6- 8GHz	5dbm	Marquardt	Marquardt GmbH Schloss- str. 16, 78604 Rietheim- Weilheim, Germany
NFC reader (inside the car)	13.56MHz NFC	2.5W	Changzhou tenglong autoparts Co., LTD	No.1 Tenglong Road Economic Developme nt Zone, Wujin District, Changzhou , Jiangsu 213149, China
Phone wireless charging	wireless charging:10 0- 148.5KHz NFC:13.56 MHz	≤24W	Changzhou tenglong autoparts Co., LTD	No.1 Tenglong Road Economic Developme nt Zone, Wujin District, Changzhou

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
				, Jiangsu 213149, China
RADAR – LONG RANGE	76-77GHz	50dbm	Freetech intelligent systems Co., LTD.	No.6 Building, No.420, Xingfa Road, Wuzhen Town, Tongxiang, Jiaxing City, 314501 Zhejiang P.R China
Garage door opener	433.05MH z-434.79M Hz,868.00 MHz-868.6 0MHz,868. 70MHz-86 9.20MHz	0.03mW 0.50mW 0.70mW	Gentex Corporatio n	600 North Centennial Street Zeeland MI49464 USA
IVI module	2.4GHz/ 5GHz	15-24 dBm	ECARX	1268 Kangqiao East Road, Pudong

Componen t name / Descriptio n	Frequency band	Max transmitte d power	Manufactu rer name	Manufactu rer address
				New Area, Shanghai

Tire introduction

Tire markings

Laws require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire.



- 1. Tire width: These 3 digits represent the width of the tire from one sidewall to the other sidewall (in millimeters).
- Aspect ratio: These 2 digits represent the height of the tire sidewall, shown as a percentage of the tread width. Therefore, if the tread width is 205mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height would be 102mm.
- 3. Tire structure: R represents the radial structure of the tire.
- Hub Diameter: These 2 digits represent the diameter of the wheel hub in inches.
- 5. Load index: These 2 or 3 digits represent the load capacity of each tire, this number is not always displayed.
- Rated speed: When specified, represents the maximum speed (mph or km/h) at which the tire can be used for prolonged periods.

```
 Q=99mph(160km/h) \quad , \qquad R=106mph(170km/h) \quad , \\ S=112mph(180km/h) \quad , \qquad T=118mph(190km/h) \quad , \\ U=124mph(200km/h) \quad , \qquad H=130mph(210km/h) \quad , \\ V=149mph(240km/h) \quad , \qquad W=168mph(270km/h) \quad , \\ Y=186mph(300km/h) \quad , \quad (Y) = Maximum \ speed \ (exceeding \ "Y" \ grade).
```

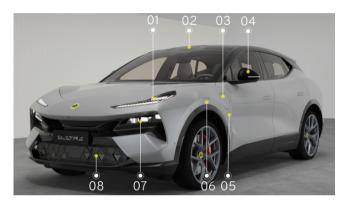
 Composition and material of tires: This digit represent how many layers of rubber coating materials are present in the tread and tire wall areas, and also identifies the type of materials used.

- 8. Maximum tire load: The maximum weight that a tire can support.
- 9. Maximum allowable inflation pressure: This pressure should not be used for normal driving.
- 10. Treadwear grade: This digit represents the rate of wear on the tire. The higher the treadwear number, the longer it will take for the tread to wear out. A tire with a grade of 400 will last twice as long as a tire with a grade of 200.
- 11. Traction grade: Represents the tire's ability to stop on wet slippery roads. Tires with a higher grade can help your vehicle come to a stop in a shorter distance compared to tires with a lower grade. Traction is ranked from high to low using the letters AA, A, B, and C.
- 12. Temperature grade: The tire's heat resistance level is graded as A, B, or C, with A representing the highest heat resistance level. A grade is provided by properly inflated tires, with both speed and load not exceeding the limits.





Front of vehicle



- 1. Integrated daytime running lamps (p.107)
- 2. Front LiDAR* (p.214)
- 3. Integrated charging port (p.58)
- 4. Outside mirror (p.120)
- 5. Outside rear DVR camera (p.214)
- 6. Front side LiDAR* (p.214)
- 7. Hidden headlamp (p.107)
- 8. Active grille shutter (AGS)(p.208)

Rear of vehicle



Rear of vehicle

- 1. High mounted stop lamp
- 2. Rear LiDAR* (p.214)
- 3. Through-type RGB variable beam tail lamp
- 4. Active rear spoiler* (p.199)
- 5. Rear position lamp/direction indicator lamp

Internal



Interna

- 1. Door opening/closing button (p.69)
- 2. Window control switch/child safety lock/door mirror adjustment switch (p.78) (p.47) (p.120)
- 3. Exterior light switch (p.107)
- 4. Driver instrument cluster (p.94)
- 5. Head-up display (HUD) (p.104)
- 6. Wiper combination switch (p.117)
- 7. Centre screen display (CSD) (p.283)
- 8. Rear view mirror (p.130)

- 9. Glove box (p.170)
- 10. Front passenger window control switch (p.78)
- 11. Combination switch (p.69) (p.148)



Interna

- 1. Left hand keypad switches (p.90)
- 2. Energy recovery paddle (p.212)
- 3. Right hand keypad switches (p.90)
- 4. Driving mode paddle (p.204)
- 5. Passenger screen display (p.94)
- 6. Emergency door release handle (p.69)
- 7. Gear selector (p.195)
- 8. Wireless charging induction area (p.163)

- 9. Accelerator pedal
- 10. Brake pedal
- 11. Bonnet opening handle (p.82)
- 12. Tailgate switch (p.84)



SAFETYI

Seat belt

Function of seat belt

Inertia reel seat belts allow forward movement of the upper body under normal driving conditions, but the belt will lock automatically during braking, acceleration, cornering forces, or on impact in a collision. Locking will also occur if the vehicle is tilted in any direction.

⚠ Warning!

- Never clip or attach the seat belt to other internal connectors, as this may cause the seat belt not to tighten properly.
- Seat belts are designed for adults, and in order to ensure the safety of children, children who are young (under 12 years old) or short (under 1.5 meters) should be seated in child safety seats.
- Only one person is allowed per seat belt, and one seat belt should not be shared between multiple people or children.
- Do not modify or remove the seat belt.
- Do not install equipment that may change the direction or tension of the seat belts. This may cause the seat belt to become stack and not provide maximum protection.

Seat belt check

Seat belt is important safety components, and improperly functioning seat belt may not provide you with adequate protection in the event of an accident, so please follow these steps to check your seat belt before each trip. If there is any abnormality, please contact your Lotus retailer for inspection.

- Check for twisted or dirty seat belt.
- Check seat belt for severe wear, cuts or burns.
- Insert the seat belt latch into the locking buckle, pull the latch in the opposite direction and check the seat belt buckle fixation.
- Quickly pull the seat belt and check the automatic retract and tension of the seat belt.

⚠ Warning!

- The front seats of this car are equipped with electric pretensioning and force-limiting seat belts. If you need to replace the seat belt, you need to replace it with a seat belt with the same function.
- Seat belts are important components to ensure personal safety.
 When replacing them, please use original or approved parts to better ensure the safety of passengers in the car.

Using the seat belts correctly

⚠ Warning!

When the vehicle is in motion, all occupants shall always fasten their seat belts, otherwise accidents or sudden braking may cause serious personal injury.

Before driving, ensure that the driver and passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Ensure that you are seated comfortably and the vehicle controls, foot pedals and steering wheel are within easy reach.



The reminder in the instrument display and a relevant message in the CSD, alerts unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt. If all seat belts are worn properly but the reminder and alarm do not extinguish, then contact your Lotus retailer.

① Note!

When the seat belt reminder indicator is illuminated, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and fasten seat belt.

Seat belt shoulder height adjuster



Press and hold the release switch to move the seat belt shoulder height adjuster up and down, which can be adjusted to the proper position according to your requirements so that the seat belt can fit the shoulder better.

⚠ Warning!

- Never adjust the seat belt shoulder height adjuster while driving, so as to avoid accidents.
- Misadjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in the event of a crash.

① Note!

After the adjustment, check if the seat belt shoulder height adjuster locks securely.

Seat belt pretensioner

In the event of a collision (depending on the angle and severity of the collision), the seat belt pretensioner will automatically tension the seat belt to effectively hold the occupants in place and thus reduce the forward lean amplitude of the occupants.

When the seat belt pretensioner is deployed, a small amount of dust (smoke) will be released with a loud noise. Prolonged exposure to the smoke and dust from the pretensioner deployment may cause eye or skin irritation.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not touch the belt pretensioner after it detonates. After a collision, the pretensioner will become hot and may burn your skin.
- If your eyes and skin come into contact with the dust (smoke), rinse with water immediately.
- After an accident, if the seat belt tensioner is activated, it
 must be replaced; airbags, seat belt tensioners, and other
 related components must be inspected at the Lotus retailer and
 replaced if necessary.

① Note!

- If the seat belt pretensioner and airbag are not activated in the event of a collision, the possible cause may be that the strength of the collision is not sufficient to activate them, rather than a malfunction.
- The seat belt pre-tensioners will only activate once before a Lotus retailer must replace them.

Electric seat belt tensioners

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with electric seat belt tensioners. The seat belt tensioners are activated during collision risks. In critical situations, such as if the vehicle brakes suddenly, begins to skid or runs off the road (e.g. if the

vehicle rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits an obstacle in the road), or if there is a risk of collision, the seat belts are pulled taut by the seat belt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seat belt tensioner helps to position the occupant more effectively in the seat, which reduces the risk of the occupant striking the interior of the passenger compartment and improves the effect of other safety systems such as the airbags.

When a critical situation has passed, the seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner are reset automatically. However, they can also be reset manually.

Caution!

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the passenger-side electric seat belt tensioner is also deactivated.

Resetting the electric seat belt tensioners

The electric seat belt tensioners are designed to be reset automatically, but if the seat belt remains taut it can be reset manually.

- 1. Stop the vehicle in a safe location.
- 2. Unbuckle the seat belt and then rebuckle it.

The seat belt and the electric seat belt tensioner will be reset.

① Note!

If the electric seat belt tensioner is resetting failed, please contact Lotus retailer.

Wearing a seat belt

1. Sit erect and fully back in the seat. Hold the seat belt tongue, pull it across the body and withdraw the belt from the retractor.



- Press the seat belt latch into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound. Pull the latch to make sure it is locked.
- The belt should be positioned closely over the shoulder (against the collarbone, not down over the arm).

- 4. Pull on the belt to check for correct latching and ensure that the belt fits firmly against the body with all the slack taken up by the reel.
- To release, press the red button on the belt buckle, then let the belt retract.



⚠ Warning!

- The belt should be worn low across the front of the pelvis (not over the abdomen) and across the chest and shoulder.
- The seat back should not be tilted too far back. The shoulder belt must be taut in order to function properly.
- Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

- If you notice signs of wear, cracking or other damage to your seat belts, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for replacement.
- Avoid contact with chemicals and liquid. If the seat belt cannot be retracted or it is locked in the buckle and cannot be removed, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for repairs.
- Do not insert anything into the buckle except the seat belt latch intended for that buckle, otherwise the buckle may fail, reducing the protective effect of the seat belt, and causing serious injury.
- When the seat belt is not in use, it should be fully retracted and never draped. If the seat belt cannot be fully retracted, be sure to contact the Lotus retailer for an overhaul.
- People with disabilities should also wear seat belts. If there are special circumstances, consult a doctor for better advice.

Caution!

Before closing the doors, make sure that the doors will not catch the seat belt or latch to avoid damage to the vehicle, seat belt or latch.

① Note!

When you pull the seat belt over your body at a faster speed, it may cause the seat belt to be locked. In this case, just retract the seat belt to unlock it, and then slowly pull it over your body.

Fitting during pregnancy

Pregnant drivers should always wear seat belts to protect both themselves and their unborn child.



The diagonal section of the belt should wrap over the shoulder and then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen. The lap belt portion of the belt should be kept as low as possible under the abdomen and it must not be allowed to ride upward. Make sure that the seat belt has no slack and is not twisted.

Pregnant women should adjust the position of the driver seat and steering wheel when driving the vehicle, and increase the distance between the abdomen and the steering wheel as much as possible, but ensure that the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel can still be easily operated while driving.

① Note!

A doctor should regularly be consulted as to the advisability of driving during pregnancy.

Airbag introduction

Function of airbag

Airbags are important component of the safety system. In the event of a frontal collision, the frontal airbag can protect the driver and front passenger and avoid or reduce secondary collision injuries. In the event of a side collision, the curtain airbag and the side airbag can provide support and protection for the head, chest and hip, while the central airbag can prevent or reduce injuries suffered by the driver and front passenger due to collision. In the event that the vehicle rolls over, the curtain airbag helps protect occupants from being thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

If the airbag warning lamp \ref{stays} stays on after the vehicle has started or if it illuminates while you are driving, you must stop the vehicle at a safe place and contact the authorized Lotus dealer.

⚠ Warning!

- Even if the airbags have not deployed after a collision. there could be internal damage to the safety systems, so be sure to go to the Lotus retailer for inspection.
- Drivers and passengers must keep a proper distance from the airbag to avoid injuries caused by too close a distance when the airbag is deployed.
- Always hold the steering wheel while driving the vehicle to minimize injuries to your hand or arm caused by airbag deployment.
- Never carry anything, children or pets in a front passenger seat.
- No objects are stowed in the airbag deployment area.
- Do not install radio equipment within the deployment range of the airbag to avoid radio signals affecting the normal deployment of the airbag.
- Do not attach cushion covers or other item to the front seats,
 which may reduce the performance of side airbag deployment.
- Do not vigorously tap the airbag area in the centre of the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to disassemble or remove the steering wheel.
- Do not attempt to change or interfere with any airbag or safety system wiring or components.

 Individual components of the airbag system may be hot after airbag deployment. There is a danger of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Airbag warning sign

There are airbag warning signs on both sides of the passenger sun visor, reminding you never put a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, death or serious injury to the child can occur.





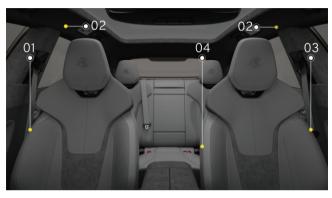
Location of airbag



Frontal airbag

1. Driver frontal airbag

2. Passenger frontal airbag



Side airbag

- 1. Passenger side airbag
- 2. Curtain airbag
- 3. Driver side airbag
- 4. Central airbag

Airbag deployment conditions

In a severe frontal collision, the airbags inflate in a fraction of a second to provide protection for the occupants. Dependent upon the angle of collision (front or near frontal) the driver and passenger airbags may activate without activating any other airbags.

⚠ Warning!

Airbags may produce dust (fumes) when deployed. If the eyes or skin are exposed to dust (fumes), please immediately rinse with clean water, as prolonged exposure may cause skin and eye irritation.

Cases when airbags may not be deployed

Airbag deployment depends on the severity of the impact detected by the collision sensor at the time of the collision.

Airbags may not deploy in any of the following situations:

- In case of rear-end collision, side collision or roll-over, the frontal airbags may not deploy.
- If the deceleration or braking force does not meet the airbag sensor trigger condition, the airbag and curtain airbag may not unfold. Such collisions include impacting a flexible object (such as a snow pile or bush), or into an object at a low speed, and the collision of two vehicles driving at relatively low speeds.
- If the vehicle collides with the underbody of a large vehicle, such as a container lorry.
- Supplemental restraint system (SRS) has failed.

Disabling of passenger front airbag



The passenger front airbag is turned on by default, and when the front passenger seat has a reverse-mounted child seat, a vehicle crash can cause personal injury and unnecessary financial loss when the airbag pops out. When installing the child safety seat in the passenger seat, be sure to click the passenger seat the passenger seat, be sure to click the passenger seat the passe

⚠ Warning!

- Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated, otherwise, death or serious injury can occur.
- Do not sit on the front passenger seat (adults and children) if the passenger airbag is deactivated.



- 1. The front passenger airbag enabled indicator
- 2. The front passenger airbag disabled indicator

When the vehicle is in the **READY** state, shift the gear to D, N or R position. After the passenger frontal airbag is turned on/off, the corresponding indicator will be illuminated.

Children in car

Child passenger safety guide

In order to fully ensure the safety of children riding with you, Lotus recommends installing child safety seats on the rear seats for children to sit on, rather than holding children in your arms.

To ensure child and other occupants safety, Lotus recommends that you should use a suitably sized child safety seat that complies with applicable regulations and standards.

⚠ Warning!

- Children should not be seated in the front passenger seat.
- Never use seat belt extenders on a seat belt that is used to install a child safety seat or booster seat.
- When not in use, keep the child restraint system secured or remove it from the passenger compartment to help prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Adults in the vehicle should be responsible for the safety of the children passengers.
- Do not allow children to stand or kneel in the seat, or be placed in the boot. Failure to do so may lead to personal injury in the event of a collision or sudden braking.

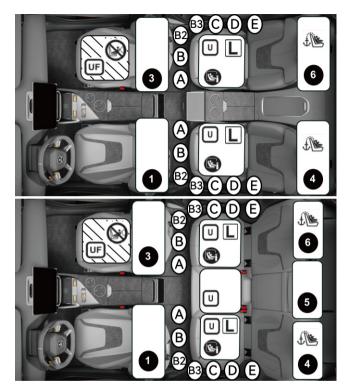
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended. On hot days, the temperature in the vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure to these high temperatures for even a short period of time can cause heat-related injury or death. Small children are particularly at risk.
- Do not allow children to use the key, fob or NFC card, otherwise children may cause personal injury or car damage due to misuse.
- To avoid unintentional opening of rear doors by occupant(s), the child safety lock feature needs to be activated.(p.47) Child safety lock activation will also disable rear window regulator switches.
- Do not allow more than one child to share the child safety seat at the same time
- Make sure there are no hard or sharp objects on the child safety seat to prevent personal injury in the event of an accident.

Child safety seat

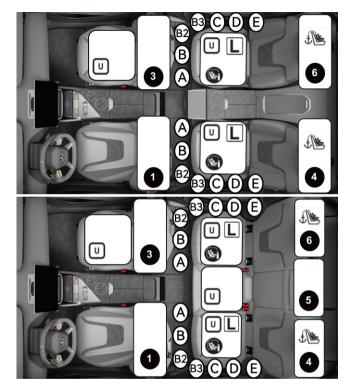
Please use a child safety seat that complies with applicable regulations or standards.

When the passenger frontal airbag is activated, do not install a child safety seat on the front passenger seat.

Passenger front frontal airbag on



Passenger front frontal airbag off





Apply to the approved "universal" child safety seat.



Apply to the approved forward-facing "universal" child safety seat.



Apply to specific child safety seat listed in the attached table. These restrictions may belong to the categories of "specific vehicles", "restricted", or "semi universal".



Apply to I-Size and ISOFIX child safety seat.



Seat position and top tether anchorages.



Apply to forward-facing child safety seat.



Do not install the rear-facing child safety seat.



ISO/F3: forward-facing, higher child safety seat.



ISO/B2: rear-facing child safety seat with full size.



ISO/B3: forward-facing child safety seat with full size.



ISO/R3: rear-facing child safety seat with reduced size.



ISO/R2: rear-facing child safety seat with reduced size.



ISO/R1: rear-facing child safety seat (infant).

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child safety seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- Do not install a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat to avoid personal injury or death when the passenger frontal airbag is deployed.
- When installing a child safety seat on front passenger seat, adjust the front passenger seat to an appropriate height as much as possible.
- When installing a child safety seat, adjust the backrest angle of the seat reasonably to ensure stability of the child safety seat.
- If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.
- If a child safety seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep a safe distance between their seat and the child safety seat when adjusting the seat forward/ backward or backrest angle.
- Never use one tether or one lower anchorage to fit more than one child safety seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle
- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, parents should check the tethers on the safety seat to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.
- Be sure to choose a safety seat that is suitable to ensure that the child's neck and head are effectively supported.
- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on adult thighs when riding, and they should ride in suitable child safety seats.

① Note!

- Top tether anchors should be used when installing a forwardfacing child restraint with upper tether straps. The rear seat angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether.
- Lotus suggests keeping smaller children in rear-facing child safety seats as much as possible.
- A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature.

- Use caution when installing child seats to ensure that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child seat do not damage the vehicle's interior.
- Long-term installation and use of child seats could damage the vehicle's interior. Lotus recommends using the kick guard accessory to help protect the vehicle's interior.

Recommended child restraint system — Secured with the vehicle seat belt				
Weight class	Manufacturer	Туре	Authorisation number	
Group 0 & 0+ Up to 13 kg	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360	030063	
Group I 9 –18 kg	_	-	-	
Group II 15 — 25 kg	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 - 0444165	
Group III 22 – 36 kg	Graco	Booster Basic	E11 - 0444165	

Recommended child restraint system — Secured with i-Size syste				
Weight class	Manufacturer	Туре	Authorisation number	
Group 0 & 0+ Up to 13 kg	Maxi Cosi	Pebble 360 + FamilyFix 360 base	030063	
Group I 9 –18 kg	Britax Römer	Trifix2 I-Size	129R - 010015	
Group II 15 — 25 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix I-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01	
Group III 22 – 36 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix I-Size	E1 129R03 / 04 0061 01	

	Seat position / Seat number						
CRS categorie s	Driver	Passenger ⁴⁾		Rear outboard			
			3	Left	Centr e	Righ t	
	'	Airbag ON ²⁾	Airbag OFF	4 ⁵⁾	5 ³⁾ 5)	6 ⁵⁾	
Universal belted CRS ¹⁾ (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Carry-cot (Lateral Forward facing ISOFIX CRS) (L1/L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No	
Largest suitable rearward- facing CRS (R1/R2X/ R2/R3)	No	No	No	C (R3)	No	C (R3)	
Largest suitable forward-	No	No	No	A (F3)	No	A (F3)	

	Seat position / Seat number					
CDS	Driver	Priver Passenger ⁴⁾		Rear outboard		
CRS categorie s	1	3		Left	Centr e	Righ t
		Airbag ON ²⁾	Airbag OFF	4 ⁵⁾	5 ³⁾ 5)	6 ⁵⁾
facing CRS (F2X/F2/ F3)						
Largest suitable booster CRS	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B 3	No	B2/B 3
i-Size CRS (Yes/No)	No	No		Yes	No	Yes
Seat position equipped with top tether (Yes/No)	No	No		Yes	No	Yes

Yes: suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS; No: not suitable for fitment of the designated category of CRS.

Remarks:

Do not place a reanward-facing child safety seat on the passenger seat when the airbag is activated

1) The universal belted CRS applies to all mass groups;

2) Only forward-facing child restraint system;

³⁾ Seat 5 is only available for vehicles with 3 rear seats and is only suitable for installing child restraint system secured with vehicles seat belt;

⁴⁾ When installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat, the below instructions need to be followed:

- In use of a rearward facing child, adjust the front passenger seat rearward that the child restraint system does not interfere with the passenger screen or adjust the seat position fully rearward.
- In use of a rearward facing child seat adjust the passenger seat height to the highest position.
- In use of an ISO B2/B3 child restraint system, adjust the seat height of the passenger seat to the lowest position.
- Adjust the front passenger seatback to make the child restraint system be installed stable. The backrest of the child restraint system must lie as flat as possible against the back rest of the vehicle seat.
- Adjust the seat belt anchorage to the third adjustment position up from lowest position.
- Adjust the headrest upward to prevent interference with the child restraint system.

⁵⁾ When installing a CRS on the second-row seat, the below instructions need to be followed:

 A certain distance shall be kept between the front seat and the child safety seat.

- Adjust the CRS seat back angle to make the child seat be installed stable. The backrest of the child restraint system must lie as flat as possible against the back rest of the vehicle seat.
- Adjust or remove the rear seat headrest to prevent interference with the CRS.
- Please store the removed headrest in the boot for safe transportation. When the child safety seat is removed from the vehicle, the headrest must be restored.

Mass level	Size category	Child restraint system
Group 0 0–10kg	F	ISO/L1
	G	ISO/L2
	E	ISO/R1
Group 0+ 0-13kg	С	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
	E	ISO/R1
Group I 9–18kg	А	ISO/F3
	В	ISO/F2
	B1	ISO/F2X

Mass level	Size category	Child restraint system
	С	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
Group II 15-25kg	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3
Group III 22-36kg	B2/B3	ISO/B2/B3

Installation of I-Size child safety seat for five-seater models



I-Size anchorages are located in the two rear outer seats, and the I-Size logo is imprint on anchorage connection points.



The top tether anchorages of the child safety seat is located behind the rear seat backrest.

Observe the installation instructions for the child safety seat and use I-Size anchorages.

Installation of I-Size child safety seat for four-seater models*



I-Size anchorages are located in the two rear outer seats, and the I-Size logo is printed on the cover of the anchorages.



The top tether anchorages of the child safety seat is located behind the rear seat backrest.

Observe the installation instructions for the child safety seat and use I-Size anchorages.

⚠ Warning!

- It is important to properly secure the child safety seat to avoid personal injury or death in the event of a collision or sudden braking.
- After installing a child safety seat in the vehicle, do not adjust the vehicle seat, as this can loosen the safety seat attachments. Remove the safety seat before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the safety seat.
- If the vehicle head restraint prevents proper installation of a child restraint system, the head restraint of the respective seating position shall be readjusted or entirely removed.
- Never route a top tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
 The strap should be routed beneath the head restraint.
- Always check and adjust every child's safety harness or seat belt for every trip.
- If a child safety seat is installed on the rear seat, the driver and front passenger shall keep an 50 mm between their seat and the child safety seat when adjusting the seat backward or backrest angle.

- Never use one tether or one anchorage to fit more than one child safety seat. Multiple seats can stress the tethers or anchorages and may cause damage to the tethers or anchorages, resulting in serious personal injury or death.
- The anchorages of child safety seat can only withstand the loads created by a properly installed child safety seat. Under no circumstances should the above anchorage be used as an adult seat belt or seat harness. Otherwise, injury may be caused in a vehicle collision.
- When a child is sitting in a safety seat, the tethers on the safety seat shall be checked to ensure that they are intact and not damaged.
- It is not allowed to let infants and young children sit on adult thighs when riding, and they should ride in suitable child safety seats.
- It should not be possible to move the child restraint more than 25 mm in any direction along the seat belt path.

① Note!

Top tether anchors should be used when installing a forward-facing child restraint with upper tether straps. The rear seat angle can be adjusted if necessary to facilitate the installation of the top tether.

- Lotus suggests keeping smaller children in rear-facing child safety seats as much as possible.
- A suitable booster cushion or child seat should be used if the belt touches the child's neck. This advice also applies to any adult of small stature
- Use caution when installing child seats to ensure that sharp edges or protruding parts on the child seat do not damage the vehicle's interior.
- Long-term installation and use of child seats could damage the vehicle's interior. Lotus recommends using the kick guard accessory to help protect the vehicle's interior.

Child safety lock

The rear doors of the vehicle are equipped with child safety locks, which can prevent occupants from opening the doors or windows with the electric release switch or the emergency handle, thus reducing the risk of accidents.



- 1. Driver door rear left child safety lock switch
- 2. Driver door rear right child safety lock switch

When the child safety lock switch is pressed, the corresponding child safety lock will be enabled, and the corresponding door and window button in the rear row will be disabled. When the child safety lock switch is pressed again, the corresponding child safety lock will be disabled and the relevant functions will be enabled.



In the event of a collision, the child safety lock will automatically unlock.

Life detection and care

The vehicle is equipped with a life detection and care system, which monitors whether there are children or pets stranded inside after you lock and leave the vehicle with a valid key. If this happens, the system will send a series of warnings to remind you.



The life detection and care system is enabled by default, and you can choose to enable or disable this function by tapping the icon on the CSD and selecting **Safety**. After this function is disabled, there will be information prompts displayed on the instrument cluster and the CSD.

With this function ON, if the system detects that there are children or pets left in the car for too long, it will issue a warning and push

a message to your mobile APP to remind you to deal with the situation in time. The warnings issued by the system are divided into different levels. The higher the level, the higher the danger in the car.

- Level 1 warning: the vehicle will turn on the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm, and send an alert message to your mobile APP.
- Level 2 warning: if you have ignored the alert message, the vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute.
- Level 3 warning: if you continue to ignore a level 2 alert message, then after a period of time, The vehicle will continuously trigger the hazard warning lamps and horn alarm at the frequency of once every minute for 30 min and activate the E-call; if the system detects that the temperature is too high, the system will automatically open the windows to cool down the cabin and activate the E-call; at this time, you will receive further alert messages on your mobile APP.

① Note!

The life detection and care system is only an aid to determine whether there are children or pets left in the vehicle, and the system may misjudge under certain circumstances. Before leaving the vehicle, the driver should make sure that no children or pets are left in the vehicle.

① Note!

The Life detection and care system function may not work properly when:

- The unattended children or pets are covered by coverings, which is beyond the recognition capability of the system.
- Unattended children or pets are in a blind spot for Life detection and care system.
- The movement of items in the vehicle, such as clothes hanging on coat hooks etc, may interfere with the system's judgement and create false alerts.
- Additional accessories added to the radar installation area in the car or damage to the ceiling.
- A system fault has occurred (e.g., camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Lotus security system V

The functions of the Lotus security system V can prevent others from illegally entering and starting your vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Do not leave the card key or key fob in the vehicle.

! Caution!

- The vehicle is provided with the Lotus security system V, but it cannot prevent all thefts and guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle. You should always be mindful of the safety of your personal property and do not leave valuables in the vehicle.
- Do not attempt to modify the Lotus security system V as this may cause system failure.

Vehicle locking & anti-theft

If you lock the vehicle from the outside, the Lotus security system V will enter armed status after a period time. If it is detected that any of the doors, hood, or tailgate is opened with an invalid key, the left and right direction indicator lamps will flash and the horn will sound to issue a warning.

If the vehicle is unlocked from the outside with a valid key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be deactivated.

① Note!

- When the Lotus security system V is turned on and the system detects that the vehicle is in the operation of being lifted, the system will alarm.
- When the vehicle is in a fortified state, cut off the power supply (battery) of the burglar alarm, and the system will alarm.

 If the Lotus security system V malfunctions, please contact the Lotus retailer to inspection.

① Note!

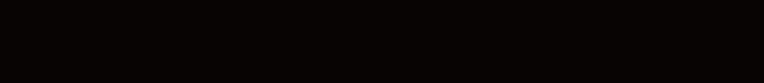
- If there is electromagnetic interference around the vehicle, such as power plant, signal tower, the Lotus security system V may not work normally.
- If you lose your vehicle, you can lock it and track it remotely via the Lotus Customer Care Centre.

Electronic steering lock

The electronic steering lock is an anti-theft protection device. After it is turned on, the steering wheel of the vehicle will be locked, so as to prevent the vehicle being driven by any unauthorized personnel and ensure the safety of the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked from the outside or the vehicle is not switched to the READY state after a period of unlocking, the electronic steering lock will be enabled automatically; after unlocking the vehicle or switching the vehicle to the READY state, the steering electronic lock will be released automatically.





DEVICEI

Charging

Charging cable

The charging cable is located under the front hood.



- Vehicle plug
- 2. Charger plug
- 3. Charging cable

⚠ Warning!

Do not use the charging cable with extension cords or adapters.

- If the plug emits smoke or melts, do not touch the charging cable or vehicle plug. Stop the charging process and press the emergency stop button on the charger.
- Make sure to keep the charging cable away from children.
- When the plug is not in use, ensure that it is covered with a dust cover or placed in a suitable position.
- Do not clean the charging cable when connected to the vehicle.
- Do not use a jet washer or steam or cleaners with corrosive agents on the charging cable or connectors.
- Do not soak charging cables in liquid.

Charging preparation

When the low battery warning indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated accompanied with text prompts, you must charge the vehicle as soon as possible. The charging port is located at the front left side of the vehicle.

The charging port cover can be opened or closed in the following ways:

 Unlock the vehicle with a valid key, press the outside of the charging port cover, and the cover will open automatically.
 Press the cover closing button or lock the vehicle, and the cover will be closed automatically.

① Note!

When the charging port cover opens and closes slowly, it indicates that the charging port cover has a position fault and is in a self-learning state. After the self-learning is completed, the operation of the charging port cover returns to normal.



Opening charging port cover



Cover closing button

■ Tap the \(\sigma\) icon on the central screen display and select the integrated cover switch to open or close the cover automatically.



⚠ Warning!

- Unlock the vehicle before inserting/pulling out the charging plug. Always insert/pull out the charging plug upright without any skewing, shaking and aggressive operation.
- If you smell a strong odour or burning smell from the charging, stop charging immediately.
- Never allow children to contact or use the charging device.
- Ice and snow in the charging port cover area may affect the opening of the charging port cover, so be sure to manually clear the ice to open the charging port cover.
- When the charging port cover area is icy or obstructed, do not force the charging port cover open, otherwise the charging port cover may be damaged.

- Before charging, ensure that the charging port connectors, charging plug and socket are not contaminated with water or foreign objects to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- If the charging port or the metal jack of the charging plug is corroded, deformed, cracked, etc., it is forbidden to charge the vehicle or use the charging device.
- If you have implanted electronic medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker or cardiovascular defibrillator, please do not enter or stay in the vehicle while the vehicle is charging, otherwise the function of the electronic medical equipment may be affected, resulting in personal injury or death.
- Never remove or modify the charging port or charging device.
- After charging, unplug the cable from the car and close the charging port cover immediately to prevent the ingress of rain, snow or other impurities.
- Do not charge when the connection between the charging plug and the socket is not secure.
- In the event of thunderstorms, it is recommended to stop charging the vehicle, because lightning may cause damage to the charging device.

Caution!

When the ambient temperature is below -20°C, do not use AC charging equipment with a power of 3.3kW or less (including self-

purchased on-board charging equipment) to charge the vehicle, to avoid causing power loss.

① Note!

- When the charging port cover opens and closes slowly, it indicates that the charging port cover has a position fault and is in a self-learning state.
- The vehicle can only be charged when parked, and cannot be charged whilst running or software upgrade.
- Shifting is not possible while the vehicle is being charged.

Charging settings



Charging setting interface

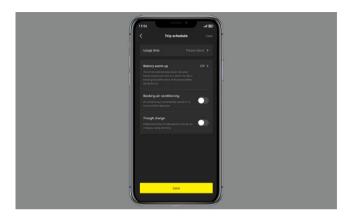
Tap the \blacksquare icon on the CSD to select the **Charging** APP and enter the charging setting interface.

- Charging limit: drag the scale mark to the charging limit slider to set the charging power.
- Max current for AC charging: the charging current is classified into 5A, 8A, 16A, MAX.
- Pause/resume charging: tap the STOP button to stop charging.
 Tap the RESTART button to resume charging.

① Note!

- The minimum charging limit for AC/DC charging can be set to 50% and the maximum can be set to 100%; the charging current is available in 4 levels.
- When charging the power battery temperature is too low or the use of air conditioning, the charging time will be extended; too high a power battery will also slow down the charging speed.
- When the charging trip, it may be caused by fluctuations in the power grid. The charging current can be appropriately reduced by referring to the charging current displayed on the central display screen to ensure normal charging. If the trip continues, please contact the Lotus retailer.
- The above content is only applicable to AC charging.

Scheduled trip



You can choose **Vehicle control** in the mobile APP, click **More APP**, and select **Schedule** to enter the setting interface, where you can set as required so that charging is complete and/or the cabin climate and battery are preconditioned by your trip time.

When a scheduled charging in trip is set, the vehicle will automatically calculate the charging start time and trigger the charging based on current time, trip time, charging amount and off-peak hours. If the charging plug is already plugged, a short pre-charging will be activated and the charging start time will be calculated, which will then be indicated via the Lotus APP.

① Note!

- Scheduled charging is only applicable to Lotus household AC charging stations.
- Do not pause/deactivate the charging function through the Lotus App or the CSD, otherwise the scheduled charging in trip will not be enabled.
- When the SOC of high voltage battery is below 30%, precharging will be activated to charge the high voltage battery to 30% before calculating the charging start time.
- When the charging time is not enough to charge the power battery to the target level, the charging will begin immediately.

With the preconditioning enabled, the A/C will be switched on automatically approximately 15 minutes before the trip.

① Note!

The A/C will be turned off automatically when the driver unlocks the vehicle.

With the preconditioning enabled, the temperature of high voltage battery will be monitored about 1h before the trip time, and it will be preconditioned to the appropriate range according to the set level.

Battery preheating at low temperature

The low-temperature traction battery preheating function is to heat the traction battery to a specified temperature through a charging device when it is below a certain temperature, so that the temperature of the traction battery can meet the needs of rapid charging.

After heating to the specified temperature, the charging mode will be entered automatically. The voltage and current of the traction battery during preheating can be checked via the mobile APP or the central screen display.

① Note!

- If the preheating function of the high voltage battery fails or is abnormal, please contact your Lotus retailer immediately.
- To use the vehicle at a low-temperature environment, operate the vehicle as soon as possible after the preheating of the traction battery. Long-term parking will reduce the heating effect.

Charging guidance

During charging, the charging status of the vehicle can be viewed from:

- Instrument panel
- Central screen display (CSD)

- Mobile APP
- Charging port indicator



Charging port indicator

White (constantly illuminated): indicates that the indicator lamp is illuminated automatically when the charging port cover is opened.

Green (flashing): the charging is normal within a period of time after the charging plug is connected.

Green: the charging is complete and lasts for 2 minutes.

Orange (constantly illuminated): indicates the battery preheating function is on. When the power battery temperature is too low, it will be heated first after the charging gun is inserted and automatically switch to charging mode after

heating is completed, the indicator light switching to green flashing.

Red: failure occurred for 2 minutes during charging.

① Note!

When charging, the instrument cluster and tail lamp will demonstrate light glow effect. In case of a fault, the charging will stop, and the instrument cluster will turn red with a fault displayed.

Charging with charging station

- Press the charging port cover on the rear left side of the vehicle, and the cover will open automatically.
- Remove the charging plug from the charging station, and insert it into the charging port, the electronic lock will be enabled automatically.
- Operate according to instructions on the charging station to start charging the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be charged if the electronic lock is not locked. In this case, you can try to pull out the charging plug to check whether the electronic lock is locked.
- 4. During charging, you can swipe the card to stop charging or select stop charging on the central screen display or mobile APP, after charging is stopped, you can choose resume charging; After charging, you can unlock the electronic lock by

- using a valid key or central unlock switch and then remove the charging plug from the vehicle.
- 5. Press the charging port cover closing button to automatically close the charging port cover and return the charging plug to the charging station.

⚠ Warning!

- When charging with a charging station, be sure to abide by relevant regulations of the charging station.
- Before charging, confirm that the charging station complies with applicable national standards.
- When encountering an emergency during charging, press the emergency stop button on the charging device to stop charging.
- Considering the differences in understanding of the national charging standards by charging station manufacturers of various brands, there is possibility that certain charging station is not suitable for charging your vehicle.

Electronic lock emergency release cable



The emergency rope of the electronic lock is placed at the upper hinge of the driver's door.

⚠ Warning!

When using the emergency rope of the electronic lock, please fully open the door and keep it still to avoid pinching your fingers.

① Note!

If the charging plug cannot be pulled out due to vehicle power outage or electronic lock failure, the emergency rope can be pulled to unlock it.

Charging port cover emergency open

When the charging port cover cannot be opened normally, the following operations can be used to open the charging port cover in an emergency:

- 1. Open the bonnet(p.82).
- 2. Remove the rear trim panel on the corresponding side of the charging port cover.



3. Push the locking lever of the charging port cover backward to unlock the charging port cover, then pull it out from the gap and open the charging port cover.



Key introduction

Card key



Exterior card key sensing area

Unlock: in the vehicle locked state, unlock the vehicle by holding the card key close to the exterior key sensing area.

Lock: when the vehicle is unlocked with all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate) closed, hold the card key close to the exterior key sensing area to lock the car.

□ Caution!

The card key may be damaged if bent or exposed to strong magnetic fields.

① Note!

- When using the card key to unlock/lock the vehicle, it is necessary to stay stationary and close to the exterior card key induction area.
- If the card key induction area is contaminated by ice, frost and dirt, this may affect the card key sensing, and it may not be possible to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- The function of the card key may be affected in low or high temperatures. If the vehicle is not unlocked successfully, please try again by moving the card key away from the vehicle completely and then place the card key up close to the induction area. If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked, please contact authorized Lotus dealer.
- If any one of the card keys is lost or to order additional card key, please contact your Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- A maximum of 6 card keys per vehicle are available.

Key fob



- 1. Single button
- 2. LED indicator
- 3. Bluetooth antenna

Carry the key fob within certain distance from the car, to achieve the following functions:

- When the vehicle is unlocked and the all doors are closed with windows open, press a single button to lock the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, press and release the single button to unlock the vehicle.

① Note!

- If the key fob is insensitive, try it again by directing not at the Bluetooth antenna with the key fob held in your hand.
- After the vehicle is locked or unlocked by pressing and releasing the single button once, the locked or unlocked status of vehicle will not change within a period of time, which means another press and release will not work.
- After the 2-step unlocking (p.69) function is activated, press and release the single button once to unlock the driver door, and then press the single button again to unlock the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is unlocked and the all doors are closed, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to lock the vehicle while closing the windows completely.

① Note!

When the **Auto close windows on lock** (p.78) setting is opened, press a single button to lock the vehicle and windows will automatically close completely.

- When the vehicle is locked, press and release and then hold the single button immediately to unlock the vehicle while opening the windows completely.
- When the vehicle is locked, press and hold the single button to activate the car search function.

Caution!

Do not modify or tap the key fob, otherwise it may affect the key function.

① Note!

- The distance at which the key fob can be detected by the car may be reduced due to being close to buildings, structures or other environmental conditions.
- The key fob is provided with a power saving mode. When the vehicle detects that the key fob is nearby, the proximity unlocking function will be disabled temporarily. It is necessary to press the single button to lock/unlock the vehicle.
- The key fob enters the power saving mode after being out of the sensing range of the vehicle or after a period of inactivity.

Replacement of key fob battery

Please replace the key fob battery in time when the following situations occur:

- Press the single button, the key fob indicator is on for a period of time.
- When the vehicle is in READY mode, the combination instrument cluster panel displays a low key battery prompt.

When replacing the key fob battery, be sure to follow the steps below:

 Insert a thimble-like tool (not equipped with the vehicle) into the key fob battery removal hole and push to unlock the battery lock.



2. Remove the cover on the back of the key.



3. Use the thimble-like tool (not included in the vehicle) to insert the gap to lift the battery. The recommended new battery type is: CR2032.



4. When installing the cover plate on the back of the key, press hard against the clip to tighten it.

⚠ Warning!

- The battery of the key fob is relatively small, so please keep the battery out of the reach of children to prevent children from accidentally swallowing it, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Be sure to dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations. Improper disposal of used batteries can damage the environment and endanger human health.

□ Caution!

When replacing the battery, static electricity may damage the key fob. Please take the following preventive measures:

- Please wash and dry your hands before replacing the battery.
- Avoid replacing the battery in the car.

① Note!

- When replacing the battery, you must keep the environment dry and clean. Moisture and grease can cause degradation of the battery and affect its service life.
- Please pay attention to the positive and negative poles of the battery to be installed.

When installing the cover on the back of the key, be careful not to damage or deform it.

Digital key

The mobile phone digital key contains some functions of the card key and the key fob.

Only one owner user digital key can be paired to each vehicle, and the owner user can share the digital key via mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

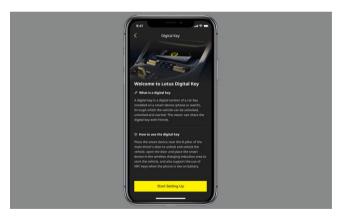
- If the phone runs out of battery and automatically shuts down, it can still be used for a period of time (subject to the actual condition of the mobile phone).
- For the time being, digital keys are only supported on mobile phones using the iOS operating system.
- For mobile phones using iOS operating system, the digital key cannot be used after the phone is turned off.
- Some models of mobile phones are unable to create UWB digital keys.

Creating a NFC digital key with Lotus APP

Creating a NFC digital key on a mobile phone needs to be done in the car.

Open Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

- 1. In the Lotus APP, select More APP and click Digital key.
- Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- Place the mobile phone in the wireless charging induction area and wait for a prompt on the mobile phone and the CSD for successful creation.
- **4.** Follow the prompts on the mobile phone to save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.



① Note!

According to the mobile phone security policy, when using the NFC digital key to unlock and start, it may be necessary to double-click the side button of the phone and select the car key card in the phone wallet for identity authentication.

Creating an UWB digital key with Lotus APP

Creating an UWB digital key on a mobile phone needs to be done in the car.

Open Lotus APP and create a digital key on your phone in the following steps:

- 1. In the Lotus APP, select More APP and click Digital key.
- 2. Keep the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area.
- After the prompt for successful creation is shown on the mobile phone and the CSD, save the digital key to the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

If the UWB digital key does not work properly, it may be related to the status of your mobile phone, you can try the following operations:

- 1. Check if Face ID pops up on your phone.
- Disable Comfort entry and enable it again in the mobile wallet APP.
- 3. Disable Bluetooth and enable it again in the phone settings.
- 4. Mobile operating system updated to the latest version or mobile phone does not support UWB.
- 5. Disconnect other Bluetooth devices.
- Mobile phone needs to open phone settings Privacy and security - Location services - system service - Network and wireless.

Create a digital key with mail link

You can use an email URL to create a digital key by following these steps:

- 1. Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- 2. With the phone you intend to pair the digital key, click on the link for digital key creation in the pairing email.
- 3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network before operating.

Create a digital key using a QR code (iOS device)

You can use a QR code to create a digital key by following these steps:

- 1. Place the key fob in the car or the card key within the wireless charging induction area, and then remove the card key.
- Click the @ icon in the CSD, select Vehicle, click to enter the digital key management interface, and click to view How to create and scan the QR code with iPhone camera.
- 3. Follow the prompts to complete the pairing, and then check the digital key in the mobile wallet APP.

① Note!

To create a digital key, park your vehicle in a safe place with good network before operating.

Sharing digital keys with mobile phone

After the main user successfully creates a digital key, they can select the sharing function in the mobile wallet application to share the digital key with others. The digital key only supports sharing between iPhones.

① Note!

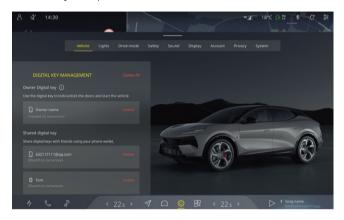
- The total number of card keys, physical key, and digital keys shall not exceed 12.
- Using the digital key requires NFC, Bluetooth and positioning functions to be enabled on the mobile phone.
- Unlocking via the shared mobile digital key for the first time may require a longer waiting time. Please pay attention to the prompts on the mobile phone.
- Through Apple Wallet, you can share with up to 4 friends who hold iCloud accounts, and each shared friend can install a digital key on an iPhone and the Apple Watch associated with that iPhone.

Deleting digital key

You can delete a digital key in the following ways:

- The owner user can delete his/her own digital key and the shared digital keys through the mobile wallet APP.
- The owner user can delete all the digital keys through Lotus APP.
- If your digital key is shared by others, you can also delete it from your mobile wallet APP.

Delete a digital key on the CSD:



Click the licential in the CSD, select **Vehicle**, and click to enter the digital key management interface. Click delete digital keys to delete all the digital keys with one click, or delete the owner user digital key or a shared digital key individually.

① Note!

- Before selling your vehicle, it is recommended that you remove the digital key from your Lotus APP or car.
- If you are a certified used car owner, the original owner's digital key will automatically become invalid and you need to re-bind the digital key.

Digital key permission transfer

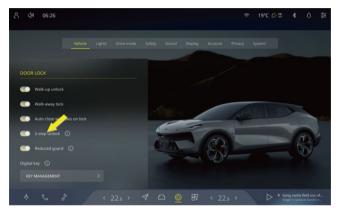
If the main user changes to a new phone and the digital key has not been deleted from the original phone, the new phone can be used to log in to the Lotus APP, click on **More APPs**, and then click on **Digital Key**. The Lotus APP will initiate the deletion of the original digital key and activate the digital key on the new phone.

① Note!

- When transferring digital key permissions, please park vehicle in a safe place with good / secure wireless location before proceeding.
- When transferring digital key permissions, please hold your phone inside the car for operation.

Doors

2-step unlocking



2-step unlocking setting interface

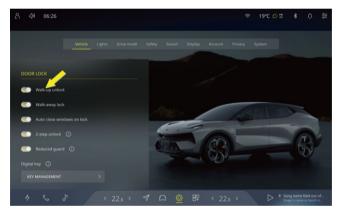
Tap the @ icon in the CSD, select **Vehicle**, and click to activate the 2-step unlock function.

With this function activated, press and release the single button of the key fob once to unlock the driver door, and press and release the single button again to unlock all doors.

① Note!

- After the 2-step unlock function is activated, you can unlock the driver door to enter the vehicle and press the central unlock switch on the tunnel console to unlock the vehicle.
- Unlocking the vehicle with key fob is described in the Key fob
 (p.61).

Walk-up unlock



Proximity unlock setting interface

Tap the @ icon in the CSD, select **Vehicle** , and tap to activate the Walk-up unlock feature.



When the Walk-up unlock feature is turned off, carrying the key fob and touching the driver's door handle switch can lock or unlock the vehicle.

When the Walk-up unlock feature is turned on, carrying the key fob within a certain range of the vehicle will automatically unlock the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in an operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.
- Please make sure the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

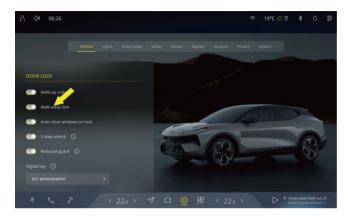
□ Caution!

If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

① Note!

- When locking the vehicle with other valid keys, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be verified if the vehicle is fully locked if all handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors aren't fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle.

Walk-away lock



You can click on the @ icon in the central display screen, select **Vehicle**, and click to activate the **Walk-away lock** function.

When the walk-away lock function is turned on and all doors are closed, carry the key fob away from the vehicle within a certain range, and the vehicle will automatically lock.

⚠ Warning!

- When using the walk-away lock function, please place the car key separately and carry it with you to avoid signal interference that may cause the lock to be unsuccessful.
- Do not leave the elderly, children or pets alone in the car to avoid accidents.

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in a operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Please make sure that the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

Remote locking/unlocking via mobile APP

You can refresh the real-time status of the door lock in the controls interface of the mobile APP. Click **LOCK** in the mobile APP to realize remote lock/unlock. You can know the status of car lock by the color of **LOCK** switch and prompt information.



Remote doors unlock on mobile APP

① Note!

- The status of door/window/central lock is automatically updated once in a while. You can also get it actively.
- When a previous lock request is being executed, the mobile APP cannot send a new one
- If you do not open the door within a certain period of time after the remote unlock, the car will be re-locked. You can check the vehicle lock/unlock status on the mobile APP.

Activating super lock

When the super lock is activated, the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is in personalization mode, the instrument cluster will display "inactive". When there is no one in the vehicle, the super lock can be activated in the following two ways:

- All vehicle doors (including the back door and hood) are closed, and the vehicle is locked for about a period of time, the super lock for front and rear doors will be activated.
- When any door is open, the vehicle will be locked. After all vehicle doors (including tailgate and bonnet) are closed for about a period of time, the super lock for front and rear doors will be activated.

Once the super lock is activated, the vehicle can be unlocked by using the valid key.

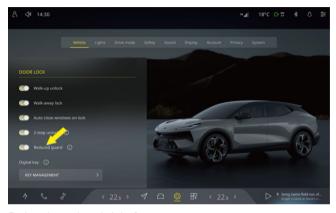
When the life detection and care detects that there are children or pets in the vehicle, the super lock will not be activated about a period of time after the vehicle is locked, and the primary warning will be sent for a short time to remind you to leave the vehicle with children or pets.

- If you do not unlock the vehicle to eliminate the warning, the warning will be sent again after a period of time.
- If you use a valid key to unlock the vehicle and lock it again, the vehicle's life protection function will still detect the presence of children or pets in the car, and the vehicle will automatically sound a higher level alarm (continuous alarm).
- If the vehicle still gives warning after confirming that there are no children or pets in the vehicle, please contact Lotus retailer in time.

Reduced guard mode

Activating reduced guard mode can temporarily disable the antitheft functions such as super lock, inside mobilization detection and anti-roll detection alarm in any of the following conditions:

When the driver needs to leave the vehicle momentarily with a living being, such as a child or pet left in the vehicle, the vehicle shall be locked from the outside. When the vehicle needs to be repaired or towed, the vehicle shall be locked from the outside.



Reduced guard mode interface

Click the $^{\textcircled{a}}$ icon in the CSD, select the **Vehicle**, and click to activate the reduced guard.



Do not leave the vehicle when children or pets are left in the vehicle.

① Note!

- After turning on the reduced guard and locking the vehicle, please pay attention to the safety of the vehicle and the property in the vehicle.
- Each time the vehicle is powered on, the reduced guard automatically shuts down.

Unlocking/locking doors from inside



Door switch

When the vehicle is in a locked (non-super lock) state, press the front door switch to unlock and open the corresponding front door. At the same time, the indicator on the central lock button will extinguish, and the instrument cluster shows that the door is open.

When the vehicle is in a locked state, press the rear door switch to unlock the corresponding rear door. Press the switch again to open the door.



Central lock on tunnel console

- 1. Central unlock switch
- 2. Central lock switch

The central lock switch is located at the front of the tunnel console and the vehicle can be locked/unlocked by pressing the central lock/unlock switch.

① Note!

When the vehicle is driving and the door is locked, pressing the door switch cannot unlock the door.

- When the vehicle is being unlocked, the flush door handle will pop out.
- In the event of vehicle collision, all doors will unlock.

Opening/closing doors from outside



Flush door handle

Unlock the vehicle with the keys, and the flush door handle will extend automatically. Pull the handle to open the door.

When the flush handle is frozen or obstructed, after the vehicle is unlocked, the ejecting failure can be assisted by manually clearing the ice by tapping the plate or handle with appropriate force.

⚠ Warning!

- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry a valid key with you. Leaving a valid key in the car will prevent the vehicle from automatically locking, and all doors, windows, and controls will be in an operable state, which may result in theft and accidents.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle unattended.
- Please make sure the vehicle is fully locked before leaving.

Caution!

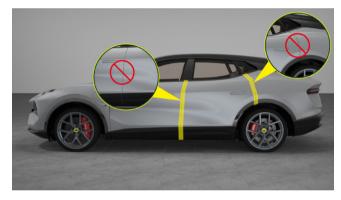
If the door is frozen or blocked, do not vigorously pull or tap the door handle, as this may damage it.

① Note!

- When locking the vehicle with other valid keys, the key left inside the vehicle will be disabled until the vehicle is unlocked.
- After locking the vehicle, it can be verified if the vehicle is fully locked if all handles are retracted.
- The vehicle cannot be locked when one or more doors aren't fully closed.
- You need to actively turn off the walk-up on unlock function to avoid accidentally unlocking the vehicle when carrying the key fob near the vehicle.

Closing by auto suction*

When you push the door gently, the door will be sucked automatically to the fully locked position. During the suction and closing of the door, do not press the door switch or pull the flush door handle. Otherwise, the automatic suction will stop.



⚠ Warning!

During the automatic suction for closing, make sure that the door will not pinch any part of your body or other items to prevent pinching injury or damage.

① Note!

If the suction lock fails, the door will not be automatically sucked to the fully locked position, and the instrument cluster will display relevant fault information.

Auto re-lock

After the vehicle is unlocked, if the four doors are not opened within a period of time, the vehicle will automatically be re-locked.

Auto lock while driving

With all doors (including the bonnet, tailgate, charging port cover) closed and the vehicle speed over a certain speed limit, the indicator on the central lock button will be illuminated to indicate that the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking at collision

In the event of a collision, the vehicle automatically activates the central locking system and unlocks the four doors.

Emergency door unlocking from outside

In the event of a battery power loss, emergency unlocking can be realized by using tailgate opening switch or external power supply.



Emergency unlocking via tailgate opening switch

When using the tailgate opening switch for emergency unlocking, press and hold the switch for 5s, and then use the valid keys to unlock normally.



Emergency unlocking via external power supply

When a 12V external power supply is used for emergency unlocking, the doors can be unlocked using the following procedure:

- Open the front bumper towing hook cover and pull out the external power wiring.
- 2. Connect the black wire fixed on the cover to the negative terminal of the external power supply, and the red wire to the positive terminal of the external power supply.
- The driver's door will be unlocked automatically when carrying a valid key fob or UWB digital key. Either hold the NFC card or NFC digital key in proximity to the exterior key sensing area to unclock the driver's door.

4. After the opening the door is completed, disconnect the external power supply, load the external wire that has been insulated back into the towing hook cover, and close the cover.

① Note!

In case that both methods are not applicable, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Emergency unlocking of doors from inside



Emergency handle

Pull the emergency handle in the door trim panel pocket open the door.

① Note!

- When the child safety locks are activated, the rear doors cannot be opened using the emergency release lever, they can only be opened from outside the vehicle.
- After the central locking system locks the vehicle, the four doors cannot be opened using emergency handles.

Windows

Window anti-pinch function

If the window encounters an obstacle during the automatic closing, it will stop closing and automatically return to the position before closing.

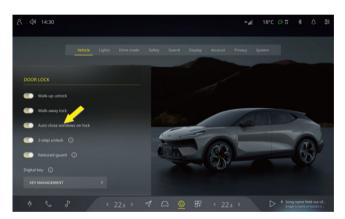
When any door is opened, the corresponding side window will automatically drop a certain distance. When the door is closed, the window will be closed automatically.

① Note!

• If the front door and the corresponding window are closed, the window can be fully opened via the one-button lowering function and the corresponding window will rise for a certain

- distance when the door is opened. After the door is closed, the window will open fully in an automatic way.
- If the window automatically rises to a fully closed state after the door is opened, closing the door directly at this time will result in damage to the vehicle. Please do not close the door and contact Lotus retailer.

Auto close windows on lock



You can tap the icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the auto close windows on lock.

① Note!

The windows will automatically close after the vehicle has been locked for more than 28 hours, and if the rain sensor detects rain, the windows will close immediately.

Window regulator switch



Window regulator switch on driver door trim panel

- 1. Left front window regulator switch
- 2. Right front window regulator switch
- 3. Right rear window regulator switch
- 4. Left rear window regulator switch

You can lift or lower all windows by operating the regulator switch on driver door trim panel.

The window regulator switch has two positions, and you can control the windows as follows:

- Manual up/down: pull up or press down to the first position, the windows will rise or lower; release the switch, the windows will stop moving.
- Auto up/down: pull up or press down to the second position, the windows automatically go up/down. The window will stop moving if it is pulled up or pressed down again during movement.

$oldsymbol{\Lambda}$ Warning!

- When operating the window regulator switch, do not accidentally touch the door switch to avoid accidental unlocking of the door and causing personal injury or property damage.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, as they may inadvertently operate the window regulator switch and get injured due to a moving window.
- Before closing the windows, it is important to ensure that all passengers, especially children, are not sticking out any part of their body. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.
- For safety, it is recommended to lock the rear windows when a child is sitting in the rear seat. Refer to the **Child safety lock** (p.47).

- Pay attention to the to the window distance when opening and closing the door. Contact with the glass can lead to injuries.
- Do not operate the window regulator switch when the vehicle speed is too high.

① Note!

- The window regulator switch on rear door trim panel can be used to lift or lower the rear left and right windows.
- Please remove the snow and ice on the surface of the window in time to avoid the window being stuck or unable to open or close normally during the movement.

Window opening/closing via mobile APP



Window switch on mobile APP

Tap the window switch on the mobile APP to fully open or close the windows. Before the full opening or closing of windows, the windows will not stop moving even if you tap the window switch on the mobile APP again.

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate the remote window opening and closing if the vehicle is not in your line of sight.

Window opening/closing via central lock



Central lock at the front of tunnel console

- 1. Central unlock switch
- 2. Central lock switch

The central lock switch is located in the front middle of the tunnel console, which controls the simultaneous rising and lowering of all windows.

When the central unlock switch $\widehat{\mathbf{d}}$ is pressed and held, all windows will be fully opened simultaneously. Press the switch again during the Window lowering, the window will stop the movement.

When the central lock switch $\stackrel{\frown}{\Box}$ is pressed and held, all windows will be fully closed simultaneously. Press the switch again during the window raising, the window will stop the movement. During

the process of raising the car window, if there are obstacles, the anti-pinch function will be triggered.

Auto rising in rain



Rain and light sensor module (RLSM)

All windows will automatically close completely when the Rain and light sensor module (RLSM) at the front windscreen detects rain.

Self-learning of one-button rise and anti-pinch function

When the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fail due to power outage or window motor repair, you can try the following operations for self-learning:

 Pull up the window regulator switch and hold it for 5s after the window raises to the top position. Press the window regulator switch and hold it for 5s until the window is lowered to the bottom to complete the self-learning.

⚠ Warning!

- Before closing the windows, make sure that no one or object is in the way of window closing, otherwise, it may cause personal injury and car damage!
- In case that there is a child in the vehicle, the child safety lock shall be activated, and the rear window regulator switch shall be disabled to prevent the child from being injured due to misuse.

① Note!

When the one-button rise and anti-pinch function fail, the self-learning shall be completed as soon as possible to prevent pinching injury and window damage.

Bonnet

Opening of bonnet

To prevent damage to the bonnet or windscreen wipers, please make sure that the wiper arms are not lifted before opening the bonnet.

 The bonnet release lever handle with the symbol (show opening symbol on handle) is located under the instrument panel on the driver's side. To action the bonnet release the driver's door has to be open. To fully unlatch the bonnet, release lever handle must be pulled two times.



Bonnet opening handle

2. From outside of the vehicle, after partially raising the front edge the bonnet will then fully open.



Bonnet opening handle

Bonnet closing

- 1. Lower the bonnet gently until the bonnet contacts.
- To fully close apply downward pressure with both hands at the positions shown in image below. Check to make sure the bonnet is latched completely.



Bonnet closing

⚠ Warning!

- To ensure driving safety, make sure that the bonnet is completely closed, otherwise the unintentional opening of the bonnet while the vehicle is driving will block the line of sight.
- If the gas struts that hold the bonnet open fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Periodically visually inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks or other damage. Make sure that the bonnet is supported with sufficient force. If the gas struts no longer hold the bonnet open, do not operate, and contact the Lotus retailer.

Caution!

- Before closing the bonnet, please ensure that there are no obstacles in the area where the bonnet is about to close.
- Do not forcefully close the bonnet.
- Do not press the bonnet with one hand, as this may cause the bonnet to be dented or damaged.

① Note!

When the findicator on the driver instrument cluster is showing, please ensure that all doors, including the tailgate and bonnet, are fully closed.

Tailgate

Opening/closing of tailgate

The tailgate can be opened or closed in several ways. In the process of closing, the tailgate will continue to make beep sound until it is stopped:

- Click the tailgate switch on CSD.
- Press and hold the Tailgate switch on driver door.
- Press the open/close switch on the tailgate (a valid key must be detected).

 With your key fob near the car. Use foot movement under the rear bumper to open the tailgate.

Caution!

- If during opening, the tailgate movement is very slow, stalls, or even starts to close, it indicates that the system is reacting to either excessive weight on the tailgate or even a possible support strut failure. Please take care to remove any excess weight (e.g. snow fall). If the symptoms persist, then contact your Lotus retailer before using the power operated tailgate.
- Before opening the tailgate, ensure there is enough space above and behind the tailgate to avoid damage to the back door.
- Manual force application on the tailgate to open or close during the powered operation, may result in damage to the system.
 Allow the power operation to complete.
- Tape or hanging of any objects from the support power struts is.
 Do not push or pull on the support power struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Driving with the tailgate open and unsecured can cause damage to the components of the power operated tailgate.

① Note!

If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once when the tailgate is locked.

Opening/closing of tailgate by CSD



Tailgate switch on CSD

Click the tailgate switch on CSD, and the tailgate will be opened or closed automatically.

Tailgate switch on driver door



Tailgate switch on driver door

When the tailgate is closed, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door to unlock and fully open the tailgate.

When the tailgate is open, you can press and hold the tailgate switch on driver door to close the tailgate automatically.

When the tailgate is in motion, pressing of the tailgate switch will stop the action, and holding the switch will make the tailgate move in the opposite direction.

Unlocking tailgate via mobile APP



Tailgate unlock switch via mobile APP

When the vehicle is locked, you can tap the tailgate switch on the mobile APP to unlock the tailgate.

Opening/closing of tailgate by kicking action *



Tailgate kick induction zone

Carry a key fob or digital key to do a kicking action in the sensing area of the tailgate, and the tailgate will be automatically opened/ closed.

① Note!

- If the vehicle is locked, the direction indicator lamps will flash once when the tailgate is locked.
- Keep the tailgate sensing area clean. If the sensing area is covered with snow, ice, dirt, etc., the kicking action on/off function may not function properly.

If the fail to open/close the tailgate, please re-attempt with feet.
If the tailgate still cannot be opened/closed, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.

Tailgate opening/closing switch



Tailgate opening switch

When the vehicle is unlocked or a valid key is carried, press the tailgate opening switch, and the tailgate will be fully open.



If you set the opening height of the tailgate, the tailgate will automatically open to the set height.



Tailgate closing switch

Press the tailgate closing switch in the unlocked state of the vehicle, and the tailgate will automatically close.

Tailgate anti-pinch function

The anti-pinch function of the tailgate can effectively prevent accidental casualties or unnecessary economic losses arising from the closing of tailgate.

- If the tailgate is blocked by objects during the opening/closing, it will stop the movement with a warning sound. If the tailgate is blocked during closing, it will move to the set height in opposite direction.
- If the car moves during the opening/closing of the tailgate, the tailgate will stop the action and keep still.

Emergency opening of tailgate from the boot

In event of entrapment in the trunk, you can try to open the tailgate from the boot.

1. Flip outward from the top edge to open the protective cover.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate protective cover

Pull up the emergency unlocking lever up the tailgate to the limit position to unlock the tailgate, and push outward to open the tailgate.



Emergency unlocking of tailgate control lever

Setting tailgate opening height

You can set the tailgate opening height by following the steps below:

- Stop the opening procedure of the tailgate at the desired position.
- 2. Press and hold the closing button on the tailgate until you hear a acoustic signal. The opening height will be stored. The tailgate will then open in the stored position when opened.

⚠ Warning!

- When operating the tailgate, it is important to make sure there are no people in the trajectory of the tailgate opening or closing, otherwise personal injury may occur.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the tailgate is closed to avoid damage to the vehicle and injury to the driver and passengers.

! Caution!

Any manual tailgate movement, too quick and with excessive force, may result in damage or malfunction.

① Note!

You can also manually open the tailgate to the highest position, and press and hold the tailgate switch until you hear an audible signal to restore the tailgate opening height.

Steering wheel

Adjustment of steering wheel



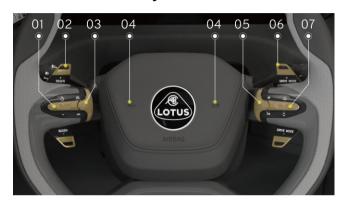
Steering wheel adjustment

When the vehicle is powered on, you can adjust the steering wheel up, down, back and forth by pulling the adjustment button on the left side of the steering column.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Otherwise, the driving safety will be impaired.

Buttons on steering wheel



Buttons on steering wheel

- 1. Left multi-function button
- 2. Energy recovery paddle
- 3. Following distance button
- 4. Horn switch
- 5. Menu/voice button
- 6. Driving mode paddle
- 7. Right multi-function button

Steering wheel button operation

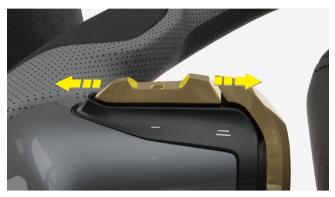


Press the left multi-function button: place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and press the button until there is a crisp sound.



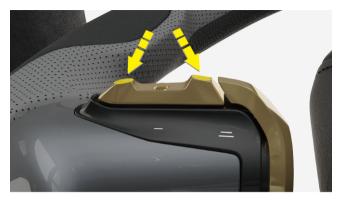
Toggle the left multi-function button up and down: place your thumb in the middle of the lower or upper part of the multi-function button, and toggle it up or down until a crisp sound is heard.

There are two methods to move the left multi-function button left and right:



Method 1

Place your thumb in the middle of the multi-function button, and toggle it left and right until a crisp sound is heard.



Method 2

Place your thumb on the raised position of the multi-function button, and toggle it down obliquely until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the following distance button up and down: place your thumb on the lower or upper part of the following distance button, and toggle the knob up or down until a crisp sound is heard.



Toggle the energy recovery paddle up: put your finger under the paddle, and toggle up the paddle until a crisp sound is heard.

① Note!

- The buttons on the right side of the steering wheel can be operated in the same way as those on the left side.
- Please put your fingers in an appropriate position to avoid inoperation or difficult operation of the buttons.

Steering wheel heating

Manual steering wheel heating



Steering wheel heating setting interface

Tap the temperature value in the CSD to switch to the A/C control interface, then tap the $\textcircled{\bullet}$ icon to turn on the steering wheel heating function at level 3 by default. Repeat taps on the level to lower the level further until the heating function stops.

Automatic steering wheel heating



You can tap to turn on or off the automatic steering wheel heating function in the A/C setting interface of CSD.

With the automatic steering wheel heating function on, the steering wheel heating function will be activated automatically when the outside temperature is too low. The heating function will be turned off after it heats up to the target temperature and maintains for a period of time.

① Note!

• Steering wheel auto-start heating is off by default.

• In the process of automatic heating, you can click ⊕ icon on the front climate control interface to turn off the steering wheel heating once.

Remote control of steering wheel heating



Climate

Switch to the A/C setting interface through the **Climate** on the mobile APP interface.



Mobile APP steering wheel heating interface

Tap the icon to turn on the steering wheel heating. Tap the icon to turn off the steering wheel heating.

Combination instrument

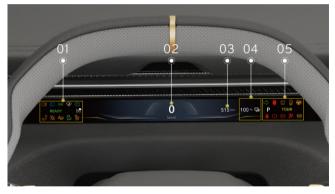
Instrument overview

This vehicle is equipped with a 12.6-inch instrument cluster for driver and front passenger, which integrates functions including vehicle information, status monitoring, warning indicators and driving modes.

① Note!

The image is provided for demonstration purposes only. Depending on vehicle features, software version, and market region, the information displayed may be slightly different, please refer to the actual vehicle.

Overview of driver instrument cluster



Combined instrument

- Left indicator display area: displays relevant information such as external light status and driver assist system.
- 2. Speed: displays the current speed of the vehicle.
- 3. Range: displays the mileage that the vehicle can travel with the high voltage battery at the current state of charge (SOC).

- 4. High voltage battery SOC: displays the SOC % and the status of the high voltage battery.
- 5. Right indicator display area: displays information such as gear, driving mode and active safety.

① Note!

When the SOC is less than 20%, the high voltage battery low indicator will be illuminated in yellow.

Overview of passenger screen display



Desktop of passenger screen display

- 1. Screen OFF switch
- 2. Time

- 3. Day
- 4. Date

After the vehicle is powered on, you can click the screen OFF switch or on the screen as required to turn off or activate the passenger screen display. You can also click on the icon in CSD, select to **Display**, and click to **Open the passenger screen** or **OFF the passenger screen** switch on this interface to activate or deactivate the passenger screen.



Click on the desktop of the passenger screen display, and slide the screen left and right to switch the multimedia content.

The passenger screen display displays safety information. When the front passenger seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt reminder and DOW will be given.

⚠ Warning!

The front passenger shall pay attention to the important reminder messages displayed on the passenger screen. Ignoring these messages may result in serious damages to the vehicle or persons.

Check vehicle trip information

Press the TRIP button on the wiper lever to switch among mileage, Trip 1, and Trip 2; On the interface of Trip 1 or Trip 2, press and hold TRIP button again to reset Trip 1 or Trip 2.



TRIP hutton

To check the mileage and reset trip 1 or trip 2, operate as follows:

1. Press and release the TRIP button for the first time to check the mileage in the instrument cluster.



Mileage

Press and release the TRIP button for the second time to check Trip 1 (mileage and average power consumption) in the instrument cluster; On the interface of Trip 1, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 1.



Trip 1 and average power consumption

3. Press and release the TRIP button for the third time to check Trip 2 (mileage and average power consumption) in the instrument cluster; On the interface of Trip 2, press and hold the TRIP button again to reset Trip 2.



Trip 2 and average power consumption

① Note!

- The mileage cannot be reset by operating the TRIP button.
- If the TRIP button is not operated for a period of time, the mileage interface will automatically exit.

Indicators and warning lamps

Indicator icon



Turn indicator: when you flick the turn indicator switch downward, the left indicator flashes. When the hazard warning lights switch is turned on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides flash at the same time.



Turn indicator: when you flick the turn indicator switch upward, the right indicator flashes. When the hazard warning lights switch is turned on, the direction indicator lamps on both sides flash at the same time.



High beam: when the high beam is turned on, this indicator is illuminated.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): after the ADB is turned on but not activated, the white indicator light is illuminated.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB): when activated, the blue high beam indicator will be illuminated.



Rear fog lamp: when the rear fog light is turned on, this indicator is illuminated.



Position lamp: when the position light is turned on, this indicator is illuminated



Hill descent control (HDC): after the HDC is turned on but not activated, this indicator is illuminated.



Wiper automatic wiping indicator: when the automatic wiping function of the wiper is turned on, this indicator will be illuminated



Hill descent control (HDC): when activated, the green indicator is illuminated.



READY: when the vehicle is ready to go, this indicator is illuminated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated in white when the ACC is ready to be activated



Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) off: when the ASLA is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will be illuminated when the ACC is active.



Lane keep assist (LKA) off: when LKA is off, this indicator is illuminated.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated in white when the HWA is ready to be activated.



Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) off: when AEB is off. this indicator is illuminated.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the HWA is active.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be illuminated when the steering assistance is not available.



High voltage battery capacity: when the high voltage battery capacity is normal, the white indicator is illuminated.



High voltage battery capacity: when the battery is low, the yellow indicator is illuminated.



Door status: when any door is open, this indicator is illuminated.



Charging plug connection: when the charging plug is connected to the vehicle, the indicator is illuminated.



Child presence detection: this indicator is illuminated when the child presence detection function is turned off.



Drive power limit: this indicator is illuminated to indicate that the driving power is limited.



Electronic stability control (ESC) off: when the ESC is turned off, this indicator is illuminated.



Electronic parking brake (EPB): this indicator is illuminated when the EPB is turned on.



AUTO HOLD: when the AUTO HOLD is activated, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 3, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 2, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery level is in gear 1, this indicator is illuminated.



Energy recovery level: when the energy recovery function is turned off, this indicator is illuminated.

Warning light icon

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle is started, the warning lamp illuminates and self-tests, and the warning lamp goes out when the self-test is completed.
- If the warning lamp stays on, it indicates that certain important functions have been disabled, or there is a serious malfunction in the vehicle that may cause a safety risk. Before driving, make sure the fault is cleared. If you do not understand the troubleshooting method, please contact your Lotus retailer.

Warnings and fault messages will be displayed on the instrument cluster or centre screen display. Some messages are accompanied by an audible signal or a corresponding warning lamp illuminated.



Low beam failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the low beam fails



Adaptive front-lighting system (AFS) activation: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the AFS fails.



Adaptive driving beam (ADB) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the ADB fails.



High beam failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the high beam fails.



Position lamp failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the position lamp fails.



Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) failure: This warning light will be illuminated when ASLA fails.



Lane keep assist (LKA) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the LKA is not available.



Autonomous emergency braking failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the AEB fails.



Hill descent control (HDC) failure: when the HDC fails, this warning light is illuminated.



Adaptive cruise control (ACC): this indicator will beturned grey when the ACC is not available.



Highway assist (HWA)*: this indicator will be turned grey when the HWA is not available.



High voltage battery failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the high voltage battery fails.



System failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the system fails. Please contact your LOTUS dealer for service when it lights up.



Drive motor failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the drive motor fails.



Transmission failure: this indicator will be illuminated in yellow when the transmission performance is degraded.



Transmission failure: this indicator will be illuminated in red when the transmission fails.



Brake wear: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the friction linings are worn to the limit or the warning is short-circuited.



Driver performance support system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the driver is distracted.



Rear collision warning (RCW) failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the RCW fails.



Headlight levelling failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the headlight levelling fails.



12V battery charging failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the charging system fails.



Air suspension system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated when the performance of air suspension system is lost/impaired temporarily.



Air suspension system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the air suspension system fails, and the system will disable the air suspension.



Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the pressure of one or more tyres is too low. This warning lamp flashes about 1 minute and then remains on when the TPMS fails



Electronic stability control (ESC) failure: this warning lamp stays on when the ESC fails. It flashes when the ESC is working.



Steering system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in yellow when the assisted performance of steering system is reduced/the assisted power is degraded.



Steering system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the assisted power of steering system is degraded/lost.



Seat belt reminder: when the seat belt is not fastened, the warning lamp is lit.



Brake system failure: when there is general brake system faults or park brake faults occurred, the yellow warning light is illuminated.



Brake system failure: this warning lamp will be illuminated in red when the brake fluid level is low, the brake fluid level sensor is faulty and/or the EBD is faulty.



Airbag failure: this warning light is illuminated when the airbag system or pretensions system fails.



Anti-lock braking system (ABS) failure: this indicator will be illuminated when the ABS fails.

Head-up display (HUD)

Head-up display (HUD) projects vehicle-related information onto front windscreen so that it is easier for the driver to obtain legible information rapidly during driving, thus improving driving safety.



Head-up display (HUD)



1. HUD switch

2. HUD adjustment

You can click the @ icon on the CSD, and select **Display** to switch to the HUD setting interface, where the HUD adjustment can be selected to activate HUD setting and different modes can be chosen.

① Note!

- After the HUD setting is activated on the CSD, it needs to be set through the multi-function button on the right of the steering wheel.
- You may not observe the HUD clearly if you are wearing polarized sunglasses. Please adjust the brightness of the HUD or take off your sunglasses.

HUD settings on steering wheel

Press the Menu/Voice control button upward to activate HUD setting.



- 1. Menu/Voice button
- 2. Right multi-function button
- When HUD is off: press the right multi-function button to activate HUD.

When HUD is on: press the right multi-function button to access HUD setting.



 Press the right multi-function button left and right to select the HUD ON/OFF, height, brightness, and snow mode respectively.

In HUD adjustment interface, you can adjust the height and brightness of the HUD using the right multi-function button.



Cleaning and maintenance of HUD

Clean the inside of the windscreen to remove any dirt or film that may reduce the brightness or clarity of the HUD image. Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently and allow it to dry.



⚠ Warning!

 Before driving, make sure to check that the position and brightness of the HUD will not interfere with safe driving.
 Improper adjustment of the image position or brightness may obstruct the driver's field of vision and cause an accident, resulting in personal injury. Do not keep looking at HUD while driving, otherwise you may not be able to see pedestrians and objects on the road in front of the vehicle.

Caution!

- Do not allow liquids entering into the projector area as this may cause electrical failure
- Do not place any objects and stickers on the projector or the projection area of the front windscreen, otherwise the HUD may not function properly to display.
- Do not touch the projector or throw objects into the projector as this may damage the HUD.

① Note!

- If the front windscreen needs to be replaced, please contact Lotus retailer for replacement as soon as possible.
- When driving in snow or when the road surface is heavily reflective, the driver can turn on the snow mode.

Lighting

External lighting control

Stalk switch

Turn the roller on the stalk switch to set the type of external lamps.



Lighting switch



Low beam: when the dial is turned to this setting, the low beam, parking lamps and rear license plate lamps are turned on. AUTO

Auto light: when the dial is rotated to this position, the auto light function is turned on. When the light intensity is sufficient, the front position light will be off, and the daytime running light (DRL) and the rear position light will be automatically activated. When the light intensity is insufficient, the low beam, front & rear position lights and rear registration light will be automatically activated.



Parking lights: when the gear is shifted to parking mode (P) and the dial is momentarily rotated to this position, the low beam is turned off and the parking lights remain turned on. The dial will automatically turn back to AUTO position. If the dial is rotated and held in this position for 2 seconds, all external lights will be turned off. When the gear is then shifted to drive mode (D), the external lights will enter AUTO mode and the parking lights indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated.

When the dial is rotated to the position lamps, the front/rear position lamp and rear registration plate lamp will remain on until the battery is depleted.

High beam



Lighting switch

The roller should be located at \mathbb{D} . If you turn the stalk switch forward, the high beam will turn on, and the high beam indicator \mathbb{D} on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

The roller is located at **AUTO**. By pushing the stalk switch forward, activates the adaptive driving beam (ADB) function. A second push of the stalk, the high beam turns on. The high beam indicator on the instrument cluster is changing 10 the ADB indicator.

① Note!

The exterior lights of the car can cause fogging on the inside under specific climate and physical conditions. The fogging phenomenon

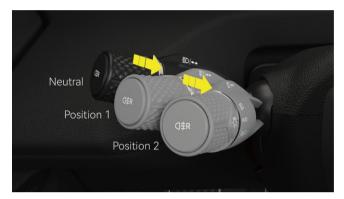
will not affect function and service life. After the vehicle is driven or parked for a period of time, the fog will naturally dissipate. Turning on the headlights can accelerate the dissipation of the fog.

Adaptive driving beam

The ADB can automatically turn on and off the local matrix of th high beam to avoid affecting the vehicles ahead or the vehicles in opposite lanes.

When the ADB is activated, the corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated as follows:

- White: ADB activated.
- Blue: ADB on.
- Orange: ADB failed.



Lighting switch

When the high beams are turned on, turn back the stalk switch to the level 1 position and the high beams will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level 1 position, and the overtake light will flash. After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will go out.

When the high beams are illuminated or the ADB is activated, turn back the stalk switch to the level 2 position, and the high beam or ADB will be turned off. When the high beams are off, turn back the stalk switch to the level 2 position, and the high beams will light up.

After the stalk switch is released, it will reset automatically and the high beams will be turned off.

⚠ Warning!

ADB is only an auxiliary lighting system. The driver shall always be responsible to manually switch between high and low beams correctly according to the traffic conditions, visibility and legal requirements.

Rear fog lamp



Lighting switch

Turn the roller at ∰ or AUTO, and press the rear fog lamp switch to turn on the rear fog lamps. At this time, the rear fog lamp indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

Direction indicator lamp



Lighting switch

Move the stalk switch down/up slightly, the direction indicator lamps \hookrightarrow or \Longrightarrow will flash a few times and then turn off.

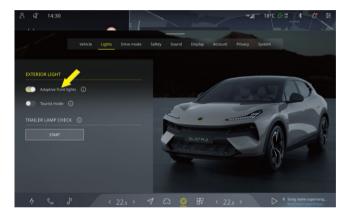
Turn the stalk switch down/up to the bottom or top, and the direction indicator lamps \hookrightarrow or \Longrightarrow will flash continuously.

Automatic adjustment of headlight height

The headlights are provided with an automatic height adjustment function, which is activated depending on the loading situation of the vehicle and the road conditions, thereby improving driving safety.

Adaptive front lights function

Adaptive front lights will automatically adjust the angle and range of illumination to suit different driving conditions, projecting an effective light beam on the road ahead to provide you with good illumination.



You can tap the © icon on the CSD and select **Lights** to access the external light setting interface, where you can tap to turn on or off the adaptive front lights.

Handlebar light

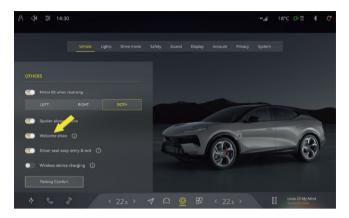


When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient, the handlebar light will be illuminated to illuminate the inside of the door handle for the convenience of vehicle unlocking, and then it will be automatically extinguished after a period of time.

Follow-me-home light

When the outside ambient light is insufficient, some of the exterior lights can remain on for a period of time after the vehicle is locked, so that you can go home safely.

Welcome show



You can tap the @ icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to access the welcome function setting interface, where the welcome show can be activated.

When you are unlocking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated, accompanied by the Active grille shutte(AGS), active rear spoiler. If your vehicle is equipped with a front lidar, the front lidar will also deploy and fold synchronously.

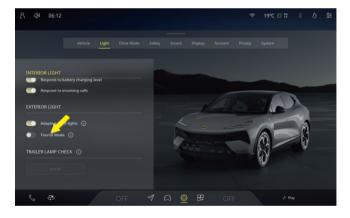
When you are locking the vehicle from the outside, some of the exterior lights will be illuminated.

① Note!

- If the door sill lamp is equipped, it will be lighted up immediately after you open the door to facilitate you getting on in a dim environment.
- When the vehicle in a non sleep state is unlocked using the key fob and mobile APP, the front lidar may not deploy.

Tourist mode

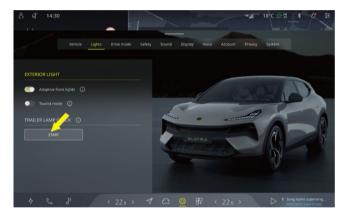
When driving a vehicle to a country or region where the traffic system (LHD/RHD) has changed, the low beam light type must be adjusted to avoid causing glare to the opposite driver. This can be switched in the CSD.



You can click the icon [©] on the CSD, and select **Lights** to enter the external light setting interface, where you can click to turn on or off the **Tourist Mode**.

Trailer lamp check*

When your vehicle is towing another vehicle, you can test whether the trailer light is normal after the trailer is installed.



You can click the @ icon on the CSD, select **Lights** to enter the external light setting interface, and click **START** to test whether the trailer light is normal.

Internal lighting control

Ambient lights*

The ambient lights are divided into dynamic ambient lights and static ambient lights. The dynamic ambient lights is able to display in forms of dynamic water flow. While the static ambient lights enable a variety of color changes effects.



Ambient lights setting interface

Click the @ icon on the CSD and click **Lights** to access the light setting interface. Then click to turn on or off the ambient light.

Ambient lights adjustment*



Ambient lights colour adjustment

- System default colour
- 2. Custom colour adjustment mode

Select the custom ambient lights colour adjustment mode to freely choose the colour of the ambient lights.

The ambient lights can be associated with A/C, charging and incoming call, and it changes according to the different states of the vehicle.



Adjustment of ambient lights brightness

You can drag the slider to any position of the brightness adjustment bar to set the brightness of the ambient lights.

Reading lamps



Front reading lamp switch

Click the reading lamp switch, and the ambient lamp in the outer ring of the reading lamp will light up in white, and the reading lamp will light up in turn.

Touch the corresponding side reading light to light the reading light; touch again to turn off.

The intensity of the reading light can be adjusted by pushing the reading lamp housing on the corresponding side for a longer or shorter period of time.

⚠ Warning!

When the ambient light is weak, do not turn on the front reading light during driving, which may cause a reflection in the front windscreen glass to see the road in front of you.

① Note!

When the front reading lamp is turned on, the ambient lamp in the outer ring will be white without color conversion effect.



Rear reading lamps



Rear reading lamps*

The operation method of the rear reading light can refer to the front reading light.

Boot light



When the tailgate is opened, the light in the boot will be illuminated automatically; when the tailgate is closed, the light in the boot will go out automatically.

Floor light



When the external environment is dim, the floor lights will be illuminated automatically as the doors are opened and they will automatically go out as the doors are closed.

Wiper control

Front windscreen wipers and washer



Windshield wiper switch



Single wiping: flick the wiper lever down from position 0, the wiper starts working and then returns to the lowest point after single wiping.



Close the windscreen wiper: when the wiper lever is turned to position 0, the windscreen wipers will be turned off.



Continuous wiping at normal speed: when the wiper lever is turned upwards, the wipers will work at normal speed.



Fast continuous wiping: when the wiper lever is turned upwards further, the wiping speed will be accelerated.

Caution!

Before using the wipers, be sure to remove the ice and snow from the windscreen to ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen at fixed positions.

① Note!

- When there are foreign objects such as dust, bird droppings, insects, and tree pulp on the windscreen, please clean the windscreen first, otherwise the wiper blades may be damaged.
- When using the wiper to clean the windscreen, it should work with the washing liquid, otherwise both the wipers and the windscreen may be damaged.
- Check the wiper blades regularly. If scheduled maintenance is not carried out properly, the service life of the wiper blade will be shortened.

 Please use acceptable detergent, as non-conforming detergent products may cause damage to the washer or corrosion to the glass.

Automatic rain-sensing wiper



Rain and light sensor module (RLSM)

When the driver door is closed and the driver seat sensor detects that the driver seat is occupied, the Rain and light sensor module (RLSM) will automatically activate the front windscreen wipers according to the rainfall intensity.



Automatic wiper: when the wiper lever is toggled to the AUTO position, the $^{\textcircled{p}}$ indicator on instrument

cluster will be illuminated, and the wiper autoscrubbing function is turned on.

! Caution!

Before activating maintenance mode or using the auto-wash function, disable the auto wiping function. Otherwise, the wiper may be activated accidentally, causing damage to the vehicle. Refer to Inspection and replacement of wiper blade (p.336).



The sensitivity of the induced rainfall can be adjusted by turning the sensitivity scroll wheel of the RLSM upward and downward. The higher the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel upward, the shorter the wiping interval will be. Conversely, the lower the sensitivity when turning the scroll wheel downward, the longer the wiping interval will be.

Caution!

Do not rely entirely on the automatic rain-sensing wipers. Always adjust the wiping manually according to the actual situation.

Front windscreen wash



Windshield wiper switch

Flick the wiper lever back, the scrubber sprays water, and the wiper scrapes a few times before returning to the lowest point.

Addition of washer fluid: when the level in the washer fluid is lower than 1.0 L, a relevant prompt message will be displayed in the CSD to remind the driver to add the fluid. Reference to **Windscreen washer fluid** (p.334).

⚠ Warning!

In the cold season, if the washer fluid freezes on the windscreen, do not use the wipers, otherwise the sight of line may be obscured, thus causing traffic accidents or casualties.

Wing mirror adjustment

Outside mirror adjustment

The outside wing mirror reflects the road behind, to the side, and underneath the vehicle, allowing you to indirectly see the conditions in those locations and expanding your field of vision.

⚠ Warning!

- When you check the road conditions outside the vehicle by the outside wing mirrors, you should judge the traffic conditions and drive carefully.
- Objects in the mirror may appear farther away than they actually are.

Lens adjustment



Outside wing mirror adjustment switch

The outside wing mirror adjustment switch is located on the driver door trim panel.

Press the outside wing mirror adjustment switch to activate the
outside wing mirror adjustment. Press it again to switch the
outside wing mirror. The outside wing mirrors can be adjusted
by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering
wheel if activated.



 Move the menu/voice button upward to activate the outside wing mirror adjustment. Scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to corresponding outside wing mirror.



1. Menu/Voice button

- 2. Right multi-function button
- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the lens position. And press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



Streaming mirror adjustment interface via steering wheel button*

① Note!

When the vehicle is started, the streaming mirror will start the selftest. If you find a fault alarm message on the screen, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre in time.

Press the streaming mirror adjustment switch to activate it;
 press again to switch mirrors. The streaming mirror can be

adjusted by the multi-function button on the right side of the steering wheel.



 Scroll the menu/voice button to activate the outside wing mirror adjustment. Scroll the right multi-function button left and right to switch to the corresponding streaming mirror.



- 1. Menu/Voice button
- 2. Right multi-function button
- Scroll the right multi-function button up/down and left/right to adjust the camera position, and press the right multi-function button to confirm the selection.



⚠ Warning!

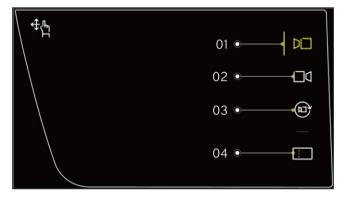
Do not cover the sensor and display screen. Dirt, ice and snow etc., if accumulated on the sensor, may degrade the function and performance of the sensor. Always pay attention to the cleanliness of the sensor and its surroundings to avoid traffic accidents.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is started, the streaming mirror will start the self-test. If you find a fault alarm message on the screen, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.
- The streaming mirror can effectively minimize the drive blind spot, expand your field of vision, and improve the safety of driving and parking.

After the vehicle has been locked for a period of time, the streaming mirrors will be automatically turned off; for a period of time after the screen goes out, the streaming mirrors will not go into sleep state so that you can quickly wake up the screen when he enters the vehicle.

Touch screen adjustment streaming interface*



- 1. Left view switch
- 2. Right view switch
- 3. Reset switch
- 4. HD/wide field of view toggle switch

① Note!

- Press and hold the reset switch to restore both streaming media screens to the default view of the current mode.
- After switching to R gear, you can adjust the reverse angle by using the multifunction button on the right of the steering wheel or clicking and dragging the streaming media interface. The system will memorize the angle you adjusted.
- In R gear, the HD/wide-angle view change-over switch will be deactivated.

You can click and drag the driver's streaming media interface to select different view angles as needed, and click the left/right side view switch to switch to the view adjustment interface of corresponding side.

You can also select HD or wide field of view(temporary field of view) by clicking the field of view toggle switch, and the system will memorize your selected field of view.

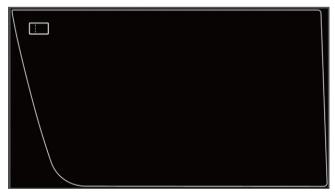
The HD field of view is set by default field of view. The wide-angle field of view is for temporary use to provide a larger field of view. In HD/wide-angle field of view, click the reset switch to reset the current field of view of one side mirror, press and hold the reset switch to reset the mirrors on both sides simultaneously.

When you are in an HD field of view and adjust the field of view, the streaming interface will display a prompt icon.



Adjust HD field of view

When in a wide field of view, the streaming interface will display a prompt icon.



Wide field of view

⚠ Warning!

- Please switch back to the HD field of view after using the wide field of view.
- With the growth of age or physical disease, the vision will decline. Drivers need to wear appropriate glasses to correct their vision, so as to avoid traffic accidents or casualties caused by failure to clearly observe the information on the display screen.



Streaming mirror fault

When any of the following faults occurs to the streaming mirror, the streaming interface will display the fault iconand a classical prompt on the instrument cluster. Please observe and contact the Lotus retailer in time

- Camera fault
- Display fault
- Control unit fault

⚠ Warning!

- Do not rely too much on the streaming mirror. When the streaming mirror fails, the view may be delayed, blurred, or not displayed.
- Please do not add artifacts such as pendants and stickers to the external camera and internal display of the streaming media rearview mirror. Otherwise, it may cause traffic accidents or personal injuries due to obstructing the line of sight.
- Sunlight or other strong light shining or reflecting on the streaming media rearview mirror display may make it difficult for you to see images or warning messages. Drivers should be extra vigilant and careful when driving in strong light environments.
- Streaming Media rearview mirrors rely on high-quality video streaming and cannot completely avoid short interruptions, delays, blue screen restarts, and other situations caused by external electrical/magnetic interference in extreme situations. In case of abnormalities, drivers should carefully leave the interference area or slowly pull over to the side of the road to ensure safety, and continue driving after returning to normal.

If there is no recovery for a long time, please contact Lotus retailer.

Folding of outside mirror



Outside mirror folding switch

The outside mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.

When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the outside mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the outside mirrors while the car is running, otherwise personal injury or property damage may be caused. Before you are driving the car, ensure that the outside mirrors have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding structure of the outside mirrors can be easily damaged.

Folding of streaming mirror*



Streaming mirror folding switch

The streaming mirror folding switch is located on the driver door inner trim panel.



Streaming mirror folding

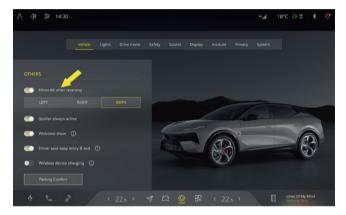
When the car is powered on or in READY state, press the streaming mirror folding switch to allow the mirrors on both sides to be folded or unfolded simultaneously.

⚠ Warning!

Do not adjust the streaming mirror while the car is running, otherwise personal injury or property damage may be caused. Before you are driving the car, ensure that the streaming mirror have been unfolded and properly adjusted. If manual reset is required, please check whether there are foreign objects such as ice and snow on the folding surface, and remove them before resetting, otherwise the folding structure of the streaming mirror can be easily damaged.

Mirror flip-down when reversing

When the R gear is engaged, the outside wing mirrors will automatically adjust their angle downward, thus enabling the driver to observe the ground more clearly. After the R gear is disengaged, the outside wing mirrors will return to their normal position.



Tap the @ icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to activate/deactivate the function of outside wing mirror flip-down at reversing.

With the function of mirror flip-down when reversing activated, you can choose to fold down the left, right or both side mirrors and save.

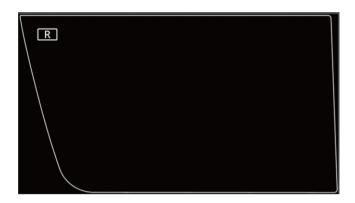
① Note!

- When the reversing speed is greater than 10 km/h, the outside wing mirrors will return to the normal position.
- When flipping down the wing mirror in reverse, the wing mirror flipping angle can be adjusted and memorized.

Streaming media rearview mirror reversing view switch*

When the vehicle is in reverse gear (R) and the speed is less than 10 km/h, the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror automatically adjusts to the viewing angle memorized by the system when it was in reverse gear (R) last time, and the streaming media interface will display the R gear icon. At this time, adjustment can be made, and the system will remember the viewing angle you adjusted. After exiting reverse gear (R), the viewing angle of the streaming media rearview mirror returns to the normal position.

When the reversing speed is greater than or equal to 10 km/h, the streaming media exterior rearview mirror will return to its normal position.



Outside mirror heating



Outside mirror heating via CSD

Click the **TEMP** in the CSD to switch to climate control interface where you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the outside mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirror.



Outside mirror heating via front console

By pressing the $\overline{\mathbb{Z}}$ icon on the front console, you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the outside mirrors to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the mirrors.

Streaming mirror heating*

The rear camera of the streaming mirror has a heating function, which can provide a better driving environment for the driver in external environments such as rain, snow and at night.



Click the **TEMP** in the CSD to switch to the climate control interface where you can activate or deactivate the defrosting/defogging function of the streaming mirror to remove rain, water mist or ice and snow from the camera.

Adjustment of streaming mirror brightness*

Click the icon on CSD, and select **Display** (p.305) to switch to the brightness adjustment setting interface, where you can enable or disable brightness adjustment function. Drag the slider to anywhere on the brightness adjustment slider to set the display brightness.

① Note!

The streaming mirror can also monitor the ambient light intensity through a photosensitive sensor and automatically adjust the brightness.

Automatic anti-glare outside mirror*

When the ambient light outside the vehicle is insufficient and the drive gear (D) is engaged, the automatic anti-glare outside mirror can automatically weaken the light from the rear, so that the rear view is in a good observation state.

When the car is engaged in R gear or the power is turned off, the automatic anti-glare function will be turned off automatically.

Inside mirror adjustment



Inside wing mirror

Just hold the outside of the inside wing mirror to adjust the angle of the inside wing mirror to an appropriate position.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not adjust the inside wing mirror while driving.
- Do not hang anything on the inside wing mirror.

Caution!

Do not over adjust the angle of the inside wing mirror to prevent damage to the mirror.

Automatic anti-glare function of inside wing mirror

The automatic anti-glare function of inside wing mirror can automatically dampen the light coming from the rear depending on the light detected by the sensors on the mirror, so that the rear field of view is kept in a good state of observation.

When you engage the vehicle in R gear or turn off the power, this function will be turned off automatically.

□ Caution!

Do not block the sensor on the inside wing mirror, and clean the surface of the sensor in time to avoid the decline of anti-glare performance.

Garage door opener(HomeLink)*

Once the garage is connected to HomeLink, you can press the button on the lower edge of the inside mirror to open or close the garage door if the receiver of the garage door is within the effective range of remote control by HomeLink in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

Before setting up or using HomeLink, make sure people or items are far from the garage door so as to prevent serious injury or damage.

Creating HomeLink



1. HomeLink indicator

Park your vehicle steadily in front of the garage door and create HomeLink observing the following steps:

 Press and release the button that needs to be set on the lower edge of the inside mirror, and then check if the HomeLink indicator can slowly flash orange.

① Note!

If not, refer to **Deleting HomeLink** (p.132).

- 2. Press and hold the garage door remote opening/closing button near the button that needs to be set (2-8cm), and if the HomeLink indicator remains in green or flashes quickly, release the garage door remote control.
- 3. Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator remains in green, it means the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

① Note!

- Press and release the button that needs to be set, and if the HomeLink indicator flashes green quickly, press and hold the set button for 3s and repeat this operation for no more than 3 times. Then the garage door can be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.
- If there are two buttons respectively to remotely control the opening and closing of the garage door, it is necessary for you to select any two buttons on the lower edge of the inside mirror to complete the creation of opening and closing.

Press and release the button that needs to be set, then the HomeLink indicator can flash green quickly; if the garage door still cannot be opened/closed normally after three times of pressing and holding the button that has been set for 3s, observe the following steps to create HomeLink:

 Find "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button on the garage door opening motor.

① Note!

The location, name, and color of the buttons may vary with the manufacturers, therefore please refer to the user manuals.

- 2. Press and release the "Learning"/"Intelligent"/"Program" button, and then perform the next step within 30s.
- 3. Press and hold the button that needs to be set for 2s, repeat this operation for 3 times, and then press and release the button that needs to be set. The garage door will be opened/closed normally, i.e., the setting is completed.

Deleting HomeLink

To delete HomeLink on three buttons simultaneously, you can press and hold the left and right buttons at the same time for more than 10s, and when the HomeLink indicator changes from continuous lighting to rapid flashing, release the two buttons.

Caution!

It is not allowed to press and hold for more than 20s.

 HomeLink on a single button cannot be deleted. If you want to change it, please refer to Resetting HomeLink (p.133).

Resetting HomeLink on a single button

If the HomeLink on a single button is abnormal and needs to be reset or replaced, observe the following steps to complete the resetting:

- Press and hold the button on which the HomeLink needs to be reset, and after 20s, check that the HomeLink indicator slowly flashes orange.
- 2. After releasing the button that needs to be reset, refer to **Creating HomeLink** (p.131) to reset or replace HomeLink.

① Note!

If you do not reset or replace HomeLink with reference to **Creating HomeLink**, it will restore to the previously stored HomeLink.

Seat

Front seat adjustment

Front seat adjustment

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat to a comfortable sitting position.



Front seats adjusting button

 Move the front end of the control button up/down to adjust the cushion angle; move the rear end of the control button up/down to adjust the cushion height; move the control button forward/ backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.

- 2. Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle.
- 3. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the lumbar support control button to adjust the lumbar support.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not adjust the driver seat or steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control, resulting in accidents.
- The seat should be correctly adjusted and positioned as far back as possible to get comfortable ride and easy handling while ensuring proper operation of the brake pedal.
- Do not put your feet on the instrument panel or extend your feet out of the window, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the seat belt will fail to provide sufficient protection effect. For example, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, the person wearing the seat belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching occupants.

After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function
of the front seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the
vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of accident.

① Note!

- The front seat headrest is an integrated headrest that cannot be disassembled.
- You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at a time to adjust the seat.

Front seat adjustment*

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat to a comfortable sitting position.



Front seats adjusting button

- Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the cushion extension.
- Move the front end of the control button up/down to adjust the cushion angle; move the rear end of the control button up/down to adjust the cushion height; move the control button forward/ backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.
- 3. Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the backrest side support.
- Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle; move the control button up/down to adjust the headrest height.

5. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the combination button to adjust the lumbar support; press the middle 🕹 button to activate the seat massage function.

⚠ Warning!

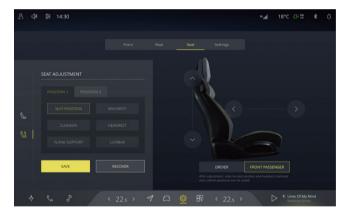
- Do not adjust the driver seat or steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control, resulting in accidents.
- The seat should be correctly adjusted and positioned as far back as possible to get comfortable ride and easy handling while ensuring proper operation of the brake pedal.
- Do not put your feet on the instrument panel or extend your feet out of the window, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the seat belt will fail to provide sufficient protection effect. For example, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, the person wearing the seat belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching occupants.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function of the front seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of accident.

① Note!

- The front seat headrest is an integrated headrest that cannot be disassembled.
- You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at a time to adjust the seat.

Central display to adjust the front seats

You can also adjust the front seats in the CSD.



Switch to the front seat adjustment interface via the voice function or by clicking **Seat** in the CSD air conditioning control interface. After the front seat adjustment is completed, click **SAVE** to store the current position of the seat.

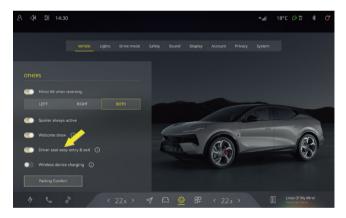
Click **RECOVER** to return to the saved memory location.

① Note!

- When the seat is adjusted using the power adjustment buttons on the seat, it cannot be adjusted using the CSD.
- It is not possible to adjust the main driver's seat using the centre display at speeds greater than 5 km/h.

Easy access

The easy access function allows the driver to leave or enter the vehicle more conveniently by automatic adjustment of seat.



Click the 9 icon in the CSD and select the **Vehicle** to turn on or off the easy access function.

The easy access function will be activated (if turned on) when the driver opens the door while sitting in the driver seat, allowing the seat to be retracted and lowered to facilitate the driver's exit.

Once someone is detected on the corresponding seat after the driver side door is closed, the driver seat will automatically adjust to the position where the driver got off the car last time.

① Note!

The easy access function, if turned on, will also not work when the driver seat is not far from the rearmost position.

□ Caution!

In the process of easy access, please pay attention to the rear passengers to avoid squeezing and collision. You can interrupt the easy access by manually adjusting the seat switch.

Front seat massage*



You can click **Massage** in the A/C control interface on central display screen to switch to front seat massage setting interface, and then select the massage modes and massage intensities according to your needs.

① Note!

- The factory default mode is WAVE mode, and the factory default strength is SOFT.
- Operating the lumbar support during the massage process will cause the seat massage to stop. After the lumbar support is adjusted, the seat massage will continue.

- Long term and frequent use of the seat massage function may cause the seat massage to enter overheating protection. After cooling for a period of time, the seat massage function will return to normal.
- During the massage process, if the driver or passengers forcefully push against the backrest, it may cause the seat massage to enter overpressure protection. Restarting the seat massage will restore the seat massage function to normal.

Rear seat adjustment

Adjusting the rear seat

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat position to a comfortable sitting position.



Seat back angle adjustment

 Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle.

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, shake the rear seat back and forth to make it lock in place, otherwise, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, personal injury may occur.
- Do not extend your feet out of the window, or place them on the seat, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the protection effect of the seat belt will not be guaranteed. For example, in the event of an accident or emergency braking, the

- person wearing the belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching passengers.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function
 of rear seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the
 vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of injury.

Rear headrest

The second row outboard seats include an adjustable headrest that you can raise, lower, or remove. When either of these seats is occupied by a passenger that is not in a child safety seat, the corresponding headrest should be adjusted (align the center of the headrest with the center of the occupant's head) and locked into position.



Rear headrest button



Rear sleeping headrest button*

The rear passengers can manually adjust the height of the rear headrest according to their height until their heads can rest completely against the headrest:

- Pull upward to adjust the rear headrest upward.
- Press and hold the rear headrest button to adjust the rear headrest downward.

⚠ Warning!

- After adjustment of the headrest, release the rear headrest button and pull up or press down the headrest until a click sound is heard to ensure the headrest is locked in place.
- All occupants, including the driver, must adjust the headrest to the proper position before operating the vehicle or sitting in the vehicle's seat to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

Folding/unfolding of rear seat



The locking device is located on the outer side of the head restraint

1. Unlock indicator

Press the locking device and when the unlocking indicator is fully ejected, fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Pull out the rear seat belt at the corresponding side, then turn the seat backrest backward and when the unlock indicator retracts, this indicates the rear seat backrest is fully extended and locked.

⚠ Warning!

Before using the rear seat, make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked in place.

Caution!

Before folding the rear seat backrest, please remove the objects on the seat, unfasten the seat belt and retract the centre armrest, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

① Note!

Please lower the rear seat head restraint to the lowest and adjust the front seat backrest forward properly, otherwise the rear seat backrest may not fold completely.

Rear seat adjustment*

The electric adjustment button can be used to adjust the seat position to a comfortable sitting position.



Seat back angle adjustment

- Move the front end of the control button up/down to adjust the cushion angle; move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat forward and backward.
- 2. Press the front/rear of the control button to adjust the back support.
- Move the control button forward/backward to adjust the seat back angle; move the control button up/down to adjust the headrest height.
- 4. Press the top/bottom/front/rear of the combination button to adjust the lumbar support; press the middle 🗳 button of the combination button to activate the seat massage function.

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, shake the rear seat back and forth to make it lock in place, otherwise, in the event of an accident or sudden braking, personal injury may occur.
- Do not extend your feet out of the window, or place them on the seat, as this may cause personal injury.
- Do not incline the seat backrest excessively, otherwise the protection effect of the seat belt will not be guaranteed. For example, in the event of an accident or emergency braking, the person wearing the belt of the over-inclined seat may get lower than the seat belt and thus injured.
- Before moving the seat, make sure that the seat movement area is unobstructed so as to prevent damaging items or pinching passengers.
- After the vehicle is powered off, the electric adjustment function of rear seat still works. Do not leave children alone in the vehicle, otherwise there may be a risk of injury.

① Note!

You can only operate up to two electric seat adjustment switches at a time to adjust the seat.

Front passenger seat adjustment



Front passenger seat adjustment switch

Click the icon © on rear display and select **Seat** to access the seat settings interface, where the position of front passenger seat can be adjusted by clicking the **FRONT PASSENGER**.

Rear seat memory*



Rear seat memory setting interface

Click the icon @ on rear display and select **Seat** to access the seat settings interface, where the position of rear seat can be adjusted as required. Click **SAVE** to store the current seat position.

Click **RECOVER** to return to the saved memory position.

⚠ Warning!

Do not activate rear and front seat memory function during driving.

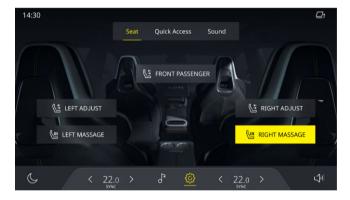
Caution!

Do not obstruct the automatic adjustment of the seat, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

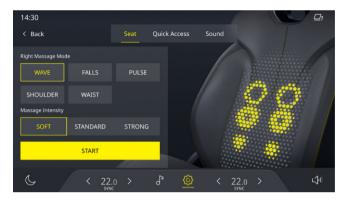
① Note!

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, if the seat position is manually adjusted, the automatic adjustment of seat will be stopped.

Rear seat massage*



You can click the icon © on the rear display, select **Seat**, and click the seat massage at corresponding side to switch to Rear Seat Massage Setting Interface.



You can select the massage modes and massage intensities according to your needs.

Remove the five-seater rear headrest

- After adjusting the rear seat backrest to a certain angle, press and hold the buttons on the inside and outside of the headrest at the same time.
- 2. Pull the headrest upwards.

⚠ Warning!

 Never drive the vehicle with the headrests of the passenger's rear seat removed, as this increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision. Store the removed rear headrests properly, otherwise the moving headrests may cause injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Installation of five-seater rear headrest

- Slope the backrest of the rear seats to a convenient installation angle.
- Align the headrest rod with the mounting hole on the seat backrest.
- Press and hold the corresponding headrest button and press the headrest down.
- 4. Deploy and lock the rear seat backrest.
- 5. Adjust the height of the headrest according to your height and make sure that the headrest is fully locked.

⚠ Warning!

Before the vehicle is in motion, all occupants, including the driver, must install and adjust the headrest correctly so that the top is flush with the top of the occupant's head to give full benefit of the protective effect of the headrest.

Seat heating

Front seat heating

You can adjust the seat heating by doing the following:

Tap the seat heating icon ⋬ again to lower the level further until the heating function close.

- The front seat heating can be turned on/off or the front seat heating level can be adjusted via intelligent voice.
- Switch to the A/C setting interface through the Climate on the mobile APP interface, and tap on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The adjustment method via mobile APP is the same as that via CSD.



Mobile APP seat heating setting interface

⚠ Warning!

If you or the passengers of the vehicle are unable to monitor the temperature of the seat or the parts of the body that come into contact with the seat cannot perceive pain, do not use the seat heating function, otherwise it may cause personal injury.

The following groups of people include, but are not limited to:

- Infants, children, the elderly, people with disabilities or sick.
- People with sensitive skin or people whose skin is prone to burns.
- Exhausted passengers.
- Drunken passengers.

- People who are taking medicines that can make them feel sleepy or other unwell (e.g., sleeping pills, cold medicine).
- Other passengers who are unable to monitor seat temperature or have no sense of pain.

① Note!

- Low level of high voltage battery may cause the seat heating function failure to be activated. In this case, the CSD will display corresponding text prompt.
- If the heating function fails, the seat heating icon in the CSD turns grey, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.
- When the vehicle is restarted, if the difference between the ambient temperature and the temperature of the previous stop is small, the seat heating function will automatically turn on according to the previous position.

Seat heating settings



Front seat heating setting interface

Click the **Settings** in the climate control interface on the CSD to switch to the front seat heating setting interface.

Seat heating time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes or without restrictions (The default is 15 minutes.).

Rear seat heating*

Click the **Rear** in the climate control interface of the CSD to switch to the rear climate control interface. For the activation of the rear seat heating function, refer to the **Front seat heating**.

The rear seat heating function can also be controlled individually on the rear display, and the climate control interface can also be controlled.

Seat ventilation*

Front seat ventilation

Click the Front in the climate control interface of CSD to switch to the front climate control interface, and then click the seat ventilation function icon to turn on the seat ventilation function. The ventilation level ranges from 0 to 3, of which level 1 has the lowest power and the slowest cooling, level 3 has the highest power and the fastest cooling, and level 0 is to turn off the seat ventilation.

When you click the seat ventilation 2 icon to turn on seat ventilation, the default is level 3. Repeat clicking to decrease the level further until the ventilation function stops.

- Intelligent voice can turn front seat ventilation on/off or adjust the position of front seat ventilation.
- Switch to the A/C setting interface through the Climate on the mobile APP interface, and click on the corresponding seat to display the seat working mode. The adjustment on the mobile APP is the same as that of the CSD.

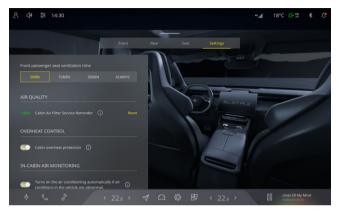


Mobile APP seat ventilation setting interface

① Note!

- Low level of high voltage battery may cause the seat ventilation function failure to be activated. In this case, the CSD will display corresponding text prompt.
- If the ventilation function fails, the seat ventilation icon will turn to grey. At this time, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.

Seat ventilation settings



Front seat ventilation setting interface

Click the **Settings** in the climate control interface on the CSD to switch to the front seat ventilation setting interface.

The seat ventilation time is available from 5 minutes, 15 minutes, 30 minutes or without restrictions (The default is 15 minutes).

Rear seat ventilation*

Click the **Rear** in the climate control interface of the CSD to switch to the rear climate control interface. For the activation of the rear seat ventilation function, refer to the **Front seat ventilation**.

The rear seat ventilation function can also be controlled individually on the rear display, and the climate control interface can also be controlled.

Air conditioner

Four-zone air-conditioner control system

Click the TEMP value on CSD to enter the climate control interface.

The automatic four-zone A/C control system is automatically controlled according to the pre-set temperature in the vehicle, and the temperature, air volume and air direction of the left front, right front, left rear and right rear climate area in the vehicle can be adjusted separately according to the ambient temperature, interior temperature, sunshine, air quality and window fog.

When setting the climate of individual zone manually, the climate of other zones can still be in auto mode.

① Note!

- You can switch between the front and rear A/C control panels on the central screen display (CSD) to control the four-zone A/C system.
- When the vehicle's battery level is below 5% and a low-power charging station is used for charging, the air conditioning will temporarily become unusable.

It is recommended that you regularly send your vehicle to the Lotus retailer for inspection or replacement of the A/C refrigerant. If you have any problems with the A/C system during this period, please contact the Lotus retailer in time.

Front climate control interface



Front climate control interface

- 1. ION (negative oxygen ion) switch
- 2. Top control bar
- 3. Streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch*
- 4. A/C switch
- 5. A/C MAX switch

- 6. Front windscreen defrosting/defogging switch
- 7. Four-zone synchronous switch
- 8. Rear windscreen defrosting/defogging switch
- 9. Internal and external circulation switch
- 10. ECO (economy mode) switch
- 11. Front passenger side air outlet mode
- 12. Driver/front passenger side temperature adjustment switch
- 13. Driver/front passenger side Auto A/C switch
- 14. Driver/front passenger side air volume setting switch
- 15. Front A/C system switch
- 16. Driver side air outlet mode



ION switch: click to turn on or off the negative oxygen ion function of the A/C.It can actively improves the air quality inside the vehicle, greatly adds to a sense of wellbeing while reducing harmful particles and airborne germs.



Streaming mirror defrosting/defogging switch: click to turn on or off the exterior rear view mirror display defrost/defog function.



A/C switch: click to turn on or off the A/C refrigeration system. In auto mode, the A/C mode is on by default.



A/C MAX switch: after this switch is turned on by clicking, the air conditioning temperature will automatically adjust to the lowest and the air volume will be adjusted to the maximum.



Front windscreen defrost/defog switch: click on or off the maximum defrost/defogging function to quickly remove ice or fog from the front windscreen and side windows.



Four-zone sync switch: after the four-zone sync is activated by tapping, the temperature, air volume, blowing mode and auto mode in the vehicle can be adjusted synchronously from the driver side. after this feature is deactivated, each area can be can be adjusted separately. When the rear A/C is turned off, the driver's side can only synchronously adjust the passenger area. The on/off status of this function will be memorized, and every time the vehicle is started, this function will return to the state before the vehicle is powered off.



Rear windscreen and outside mirror defrost/ defogging switches: click to turn on or off the defrost/defogging functions of rear windscreen and outside mirrors.



Internal circulation switch: click to activate the internal circulation of air in the vehicle



External circulation switch: click to activate the external circulation of air in the vehicle.



Automatic circulation mode: when the A/C is turned to auto mode, the internal/external circulation will be automatically activated.



ECO switch: click to turn on or off the economic operation mode of the A/C.



Window blowing mode: air flow blows front windscreen and front side window.



Face blowing mode: when the air outlet is opened, the air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the side faces of the driver and front passenger.



Foot blowing mode: air flow blows to the side feet of the driver and front passenger.



Air volume control switch: tap "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the air volume at the corresponding side respectively. Adjust the air volume to reduce or increase by 1 gear, the higher the value, the greater the air volume.



Automatic air volume adjustment switch: turn on auto mode and the air volume will be automatically adjusted.



Front A/C system switch: click to turn the front A/C system on or off.

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, make sure that all windows are free of ice, snow or fog, otherwise your vision will be obstructed and you will be involved in a traffic accident.
- Do not turn on the internal circulation function for a long time, which may cause the air in the vehicle to be not fresh and the windows may fog.

① Note!

- Turning off the A/C switch is not turning off the A/C system.
 The heater system may still be working.
- When you turn on the air conditioning system for the first time in a very humid environment, it is normal for the windscreen to produce slight fog.
- If the air conditioning system operates with excessive noise, you can manually lower the air volume level.
- The air conditioning compressor not only provides cooling for the passenger compartment, but also cools the battery. Therefore, in hot weather, even if the air conditioning is turned off, the compressor may still be working, which is a normal phenomenon. This is to maintain the battery in an optimal temperature range to ensure longer service life and optimal performance.

- During operation or when the air conditioning system is turned off, there may be a slight sound similar to running water or purring, which is a normal phenomenon when the refrigerant is working normally in the air conditioning system.
- To ensure the efficiency of the temperature control system, please close all windows and ensure that the external grille in front of the windscreen is free of ice, snow, leaves, and other debris
- After the four zone sync switch is turned on, you turn off the front and rear A/C systems simultaneously by clicking the front A/C system switch, adjusting the driver side air volume to level 0, or pressing the driver side temperature adjustment switch.
- When you feel that the air inside the vehicle is muddy and dull, you can turn on the external circulation function to introduce the outside air into the vehicle to keep the air in the vehicle fresh.
- In auto mode, the air volume can be selected from 3 levels. In non auto mode, the air volume can be selected from 7 levels.
- When the air conditioning system is turned on while parked, it is normal for a small pool of water to form below the vehicle, which is excess water discharged during the dehumidification process.
- When locking the car and leaving, if it is found that the air conditioning blower inside the cab is still working, it is normal for the air conditioning system to operate its self drying

function to minimize the accumulation of moisture or mold inside the air conditioning system.

Climate control panel of front tunnel console



- 1. Driver side temperature/air volume adjustment switch
- 2. Passenger side temperature/air volume adjustment switch

Short press the temperature adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side to turn on/off the corresponding area air conditioning system in the front row and enter the air conditioning control interface. In the air conditioning settings interface, you can customize the air conditioning lever adjustment function to temperature or air volume in the settings options.



When selecting **Temperature**, turn the temperature/air volume adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the corresponding side air conditioning temperature.

When selecting **Air volume**, turn the temperature/air volume adjustment switch on the driver's or passenger's side up or down to adjust the air volume of the corresponding side air conditioner.

① Note!

- Pull up or down and hold to quickly adjust the A/C temperature or air volume.
- Even if the high voltage battery is low, the use of the A/C will not be limited. Please note whether the high voltage battery meets the driving requirements.

Auto mode

The four air-conditioner zones in the car can be switched individually to auto mode. You can switch the auto mode on/off by doing the following:

- Press the AUTO switch in the climate control panel of the front tunnel console to turn on/off the automatic mode of the four climate zones
- Click the AUTO switch for individual climate zone on the front or rear climate control panel to enable/disable the AUTO mode of corresponding climate zone.



Auto mode: after clicking it on, the A/C system automatically controls the temperature, air volume and air direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, and maintains the temperature in the vehicle at the temperature value you set.

The auto mode is deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- Enable maximum defrost function.
- Adjust the blowing mode.
- Turn on A/C MAX.
- Turn off the AUTO switch.

Temperature adjustment

The four climate zones in the vehicle can be individually adjusted for temperature. When the front or rear A/C system is turned on, you can click the TEMP value and drag it left and right on the front or rear climate control interface to quickly select the expected temperature value, or you can click \checkmark or \gt on both sides of the TEMP to adjust the temperature.

Rear climate control interface of CSD



- Top control bar
- 2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
- 3. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch
- 4. Rear left/right Auto A/C switch

- 5. Rear left/right air volume setting switch
- 6. Rear A/C system switch

The activation/deactivation of rear climate control interface on the CSD can be found in the activation/deactivation of **Front climate control interface** (p.149).

Rear climate control interface

There is a rear A/C control panel on the centre armrest of the rear seat. Some models have a rear A/C control panel in the rear seat center armrest.



- I. Rear seat setting switch
- 2. Rear left/right air outlet mode
- 3. Rear left/right temperature adjustment switch

- 4. Rear left/right Auto A/C switch
- 5. Rear left/right air volume setting switch
- 6. Rear A/C system switch



Rear seat setting switch: click to enter the rear seat setting interface.



Face blowing mode: when the air outlets are opened, the air flow blows out from the centre and side air outlets, blowing the faces of the rear passengers.



Feet blowing mode: air flow blows towards the feet of the rear passengers.



Auto mode: after clicking it on, the A/C system automatically controls the temperature, air volume and air direction according to the temperature you set in the vehicle, and maintains the temperature in the vehicle at the temperature value you set.



Air volume control switch: click "-" or "+" switch on both sides of the fan to adjust the air volume at the corresponding side respectively. Adjust the air volume to reduce or increase by 1 gear, the higher the value, the greater the air volume.



Automatic air volume adjustment switch: turn on auto mode and the air volume will be automatically adjusted.



Rear A/C system switch: click to turn the rear A/C system on or off.

Remotely control A/C



Remote A/C switch on mobile APP

You can remotely turn on or off the A/C in the following ways:

- Click the remote A/C switch of mobile APP to turn on or off the A/C remotely.
- Click the Climate on mobile APP interface, switch to the A/C setting interface, click O to turn on or off the A/C.
- Click the Climate on mobile APP interface, switch to the A/C setting interface, and click HI or LO to directly adjust the temperature to the highest or lowest when the air conditioning is turned on.

After the A/C is turned on, you can drag the slider to any position of the temperature adjustment slider to set the temperature in the vehicle.

There are 12 levels to be selected for the remote control of the A/C on mobile APP (minimum 5 minutes, maximum 60 minutes). If you need to use the A/C for a longer time, you must remotely turn on the A/C system again.

If the air in the car is turbid, you can also click the **Ventilation** switch, and remotely turn on the cabin cleaning function before getting in the car to allow the outside air entering the car for a period of time to remove the odor inside the car and keep the air inside the car fresh. In high temperature weather, doing this can also play a certain cooling effect.

① Note!

- The remote control of A/C with mobile APP only supports setting the temperature in the whole car other than in individual zones.
- Any operation of the mobile APP to remotely control the air conditioner will stop immediately after the driver unlocks the vehicle.

A/C settings



• Air quality

The air quality detection system can detect the CO_2 concentration, humidity and PM 2.5 in the air inside the vehicle respectively, and display the service life of the pollen filter, reminding you to timely maintain and service to improve the air purification function.

① Note!

- After the ION air purifier is turned on, it is recommended that you close the windows.
- When the service life of the pollen filter is less than 20%, please go to the Lotus retailer to replace it in time.

- Reuse of the pollen filter may lead to a decrease in the air quality in the car, make sure that the pollen filter has been replaced before resetting the service life of the pollen filter.
- Cabin overheat protection

Click the **Settings** in the climate control interface to enter the climate setting interface, where you can choose to turn on or off the cabin overheat protection.

The temperature control system can reduce the temperature in the car when the ambient temperature is extremely high. After this function is enabled, the A/C system will start to cool down the car when the temperature in the car is monitored to exceed 40°C.

After you leave and lock the vehicle, this feature will automatically turn off after about 24 hours, but the function switch will remain on until you manually turn it off.

⚠ Warning!

Never leave children helpless adults, people with disabilities, animals unattended in the car. Under extreme external conditions, the interior of the car may become dangerously hot even if the cabin overheat protection function is activated.

① Note!

When the high voltage battery capacity is less than 20%, the cabin overheat protection function in the vehicle cannot be activated.

When the front windshield may be fogged, and the air CO_2 concentration, humidity and PM 2.5 concentration is high in the air inside the vehicle, the pop-up window will be triggered to remind you to turn on the automatic A/C. You can choose to **OPEN NOW** or **CANCEL** the A/C. If you do not handle it within a period of time, the A/C will automatically start.



① Note!

Turn off all automatic functions in the climate setting interface to avoid automatically turning on the A/C system.

Air quality system (AQS)

The AQS consists of a pollen filter and an air quality sensor.

The multiple filter can filter out smoke and solid particles from the air entering the vehicle, and remove odour and pollutants to maintain a healthy and fresh environment in the vehicle. The air quality sensor monitors the content of pollutants in the air outside the vehicle. When the pollutant content reaches a certain level, the air inlet will be closed, and the air in the car will begin to circulate internally to avoid being polluted by the outside air.

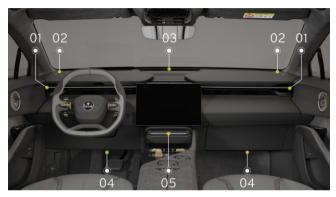
Air inlet



There may be leaves and insects built up in the A/C exterior vents in the grille under the rear of the bonnet, so please clean up them regularly to avoid blockages.

Air outlet

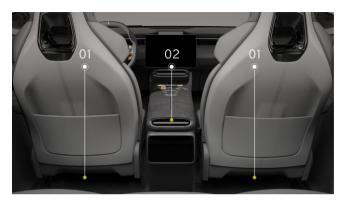
Overview of front air outlet



Overview of front air outlet

- 1. Front side air outlet
- 2. Side defrost air outlet
- 3. Front windscreen defrost air outlet
- 4. Front foot air outlet
- 5. Middle air outlet

Overview of rear air outlet



- 1. Rear foot air outlet
- 2. Rear air outlet of tunnel console

Overview of rear air outlet*



- 1. Rear foot air outlet
- 2. Rear air outlet of tunnel console

Air conditioner outlet adjustment

The front air conditioner outlet is arranged with 4 electric adjustable air outlets, the rear is arranged with 2 electric adjustable air outlets, and each side of the B pillar is arranged with 1 manually adjustable air outlet, and each air outlet can be adjusted separately.



Wind beam adjustment interface

On the A/C control interface, double-tap to turn on the corresponding air flow, and double-tap again to turn it off. Tap and drag the air flow to adjust the air flow direction.

When the air outlet is fully closed, double clicking on the corresponding side airflow will automatically activate the blowing mode while opening the corresponding air outlet.

When the vehicle is powered off or the air conditioning is turned off, the status of the air outlet will be remembered. After the vehicle is started and the air conditioning is turned on, the air outlet will be opened in the same state as the last time the air conditioning was used.



Rear side air outlet

The air outlets on the interior panels on both sides of the B-pillar can adjust the wind direction through the blades at the air outlets.

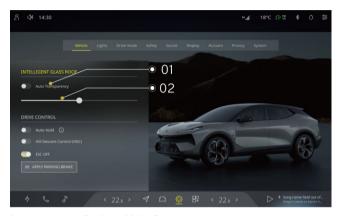
Panoramic sunroof*

The vehicle is equipped with a panoramic sunroof, which provides you with a wider field of vision, and the transparency of the sunroof can be adjusted for a better experience. But the sunroof won't open.



Panoramic sunroof

Transparency adjustment



transparency adjustment interface

- 1. Auto transparency
- 2. Transparency adjustment switch

You can click the @icon on CSD as needed, select the **Vehicle**, and switch to the transparency adjustment interface.

Manual transparency adjustment

Roof glass transparency has multiple gears, click or drag the slider to any position on the transparency adjustment slider to set the roof glass transparency.

Automatic transparency adjustment

Turn on the roof glass transparency automatic adjustment switch, the roof glass transparency will be adjusted automatically according to the ambient temperature and light intensity.

① Note!

After auto-adjust is turned on, manual adjustments cannot be made.

The roof glass transparency can also be adjusted automatically by any of the following operations:

- After the car is unlocked, the roof glass transparency is adjusted automatically to the transparency level when the car was last locked.
- When the car is locked from outside the car, the roof glass transparency will be adjusted automatically to the maximum level for complete atomization.

Intelligent voice transparency adjustment

You can adjust the roof glass transparency by intelligent voice.

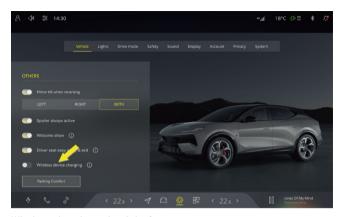
After intelligent voice adjustment of the roof glass transparency to the maximum or minimum gear, it will be reminded by voice.

Wireless device charging



Sensing area for wireless charging

When charging, please place the mobile phone face up within the sensing area for wireless charging.



Wireless charging setup interface

Tap the @ icon in the CSD to enable or disable the wireless charging function of mobile phones in the Vehicle function setting interface. When you click to turn on the mobile phone wireless charging function, there will be a pop-up window prompting to confirm again.



 Swipe down from the top of the CSD to open the quick panel, and click Wireless Charging to turn this function on or off.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not place objects containing metal components in the sensing area for wireless charging together with the mobile phone, otherwise the objects containing metal components may be heated or damaged, causing a safety accident.
- Drivers should not set up wireless charging during driving.
- Do not put the unattended mobile phone in the vehicle for charging, so as to avoid the safety risk.

Caution!

- Before using wireless charging, make sure your card keys, credit cards or other magnetic objects are far away from the charging area to avoid damage.
- Do not spill water in the front storage box to prevent water from entering the wireless charging module and causing damage to the electronic components.
- Please do not place heavy objects in the charging area to avoid damaging the wireless charging module of the mobile phone.

① Note!

- When the mobile phone is hot, the vehicle may stop charging to protect the battery of the mobile phone and the charging will not be resumed until the mobile phone cools down.
- It is normal for the mobile phone to experience an increase in temperature during charging.
- If you use the card key to start the vehicle, do not remove the card key to charge the mobile phone until the vehicle enters the READY state. If the wireless charging function is activated with the card key not removed, a reminder will appear on the CSD.
- The wireless charging function only supports mobile phones, earphones, stereos and other devices that meet the wireless charging protocol.
- Wireless charging supports up to 50W charging.

- When using wireless charging function, please place the device in the center of the charging area to avoid causing the device to be unable to charge or have low charging efficiency.
- Only 1 mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- If the phone case is made of special material (such as a phone case with a metal bracket/metal magnet) or is too thick, it may cause charging failure.
- When driving on a bumpy road, the wireless charging of the mobile phone may be intermittently stopped.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged properly, always make sure that the mobile phone is placed in the wireless charging area without foreign objects, or wait for the wireless charging induction area to cool down before another try. If it is still impossible to charge, please contact Lotus retailer in time.
- When the vehicle is in P gear, pressing the brake pedal will trigger the function of detecting valid keys in the car, which will interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone; Opening the car door will trigger a valid key forget reminder, which will also interrupt the wireless charging function of the phone.

Car power

USB-C port

Front USB-C ports

⚠ Warning!

Do not to connect cord to USB port while driving.



- 1. Data transmission interface (DTI)
- 2. Charging port

! Caution!

Do not connect external devices that are not suitable for this vehicle to the USB-C interface in the central armrest box, as this may cause the vehicle's electronic devices to malfunction.

Two USB-C ports are provided in front armrest box. Data transmission interface supports data transmission between terminal products such as mobile phones, USB-C flash drives, tablets and the infotainment head unit(IHU), and can also be used to charge the terminal products. Charging port can be used for charging terminal products such as mobile phones/tablets.



After the armrest is closed, the charging cable or data cable can be extended from the shown position.

Rear USB-C ports



There are two USB-C ports in the lower centre of the rear seat cushion, which can be used by passengers for charging.

Rear USB-C ports*



There are two USB-C ports in the rear central armrest box, which can be used by passengers for charging.

12V power supply

There are 12V power supplies in the front armrest box and the boot respectively, which support a maximum power of 180W to charge the electronic equipment.



12V power supply in front armrest box

To use the 12V power supply in the front armrest box, please flip the protective cover to the right.



12V power supply in boot

To use the 12V power supply in the boot, please push the protective cover down and backward

⚠ Warning!

- Do not insert your fingers or conductive objects (such as pens) into the socket
- Close the protective cover after use of the 12V power supply.
 Never allow water or any other liquid to come into contact with the socket.
- Connected devices may get hot during charging. Make sure that the hot devices will not endanger personnel safety or cause property damages.

Caution!

- Do not use electrical accessories with ratings greater than 12V or 180W, as this may cause the system to malfunction.
- Do not use equipment that may interfere with the radio receiver or electrical system of the vehicle.

Sun visors and vanity mirrors

Sun visor

Rational use of sun visors can effectively block sunlight and avoid sun glare.



Flip down the sun visor to open it and adjust the angle as needed to block the sun.



Flip the sun visor to the side if sunlight enters the vehicle from side windows.

Vanity mirror

The vanity mirrors are installed on the inner side of the sun visors. Flip down the sun visor and flip up the vanity mirror cover to use the mirror, and the vanity mirror light will be illuminated automatically.



⚠ Warning!

Do not uncover the vanity mirror while driving, otherwise the light reflected from it may dazzle you and others.

Storage device

⚠ Warning!

If objects within the vehicle are not stored correctly, they may become projectiles, potentially hitting occupants within the vehicle.

Cup holders and open storage spaces may not always keep all items in place. There is a risk of injury in cases of sudden braking or change the direction particularly in the event of an accident.

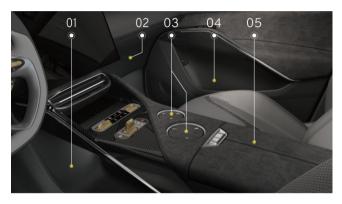
- Close the lockable storage spaces before driving.
- Always store objects so that they are secure.
- Always store and secure hard, heavy, sharp-edged, fragile or bulky objects in the trunk.
- Close the container when using the cup holders, particularly if the liquid is hot.

① Note!

The trunk floor may be damaged by an unevenly distributed load or an abrupt application of load.

- Distribute the load evenly.
- Drive carefully when the vehicle is fully laden. Avoid abrupt starts, braking and steering as well as rapid cornering.

Front storage device

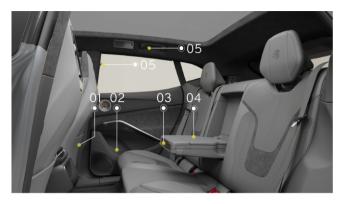


- 1. Front tunnel console lower pocket*
- 2. Glove box
- 3. Front liftable cup holder
- 4. Front door pocket
- 5. Front central armrest box

⚠ Warning!

If your vehicle has storage space under the front dashboard, please do not place items that cannot be placed smoothly, such as water cups, circular or cylindrical objects. Otherwise, in the event of an emergency braking or collision accident, it may cause personal injury or damage to objects due to collision within the vehicle.

Rear storage device

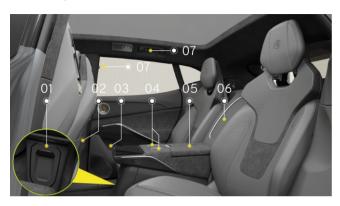


- 1. Backrest storage bag
- 2. Rear door pocket
- 3. Rear central armrest cup holder
- 4. Rear central armrest box
- 5. Coat hook

⚠ Warning!

Small items should be stored in the glove box or other storage devices to ensure that they are fixed in place. Otherwise, they may cause harm to the passengers in the vehicle during a sudden brake or an accident.

Rear storage device*



- 1. Rear tunnel console pocket
- 2. Backrest storage bag
- 3. Rear door pocket
- 4. Rear liftable cup holder
- . Rear central armrest box
- 6. Rear seat backrest pocket
- 7. Coat hook

⚠ Warning!

Small items should be stored in the glove box or other storage devices to ensure that they are fixed in place. Otherwise, they may cause harm to the passengers in the vehicle during a sudden brake or an accident.

Coat hook



Coat hooks are installed on both sides of the rear B-pillar and above the door for passengers to place clothes or hats.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not hang sharp or excessively hard objects to avoid personal injury.
- Not to having hang clothes in a way to obscure driver's view of the road.

① Note!

Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks to avoid damaging them.

Front cup holder



Liftable cup holder

There is a liftable cup holder on the front/rear tunnel console. To use the cup holder, press it until its bottom is locked, and then place the cup on the cup holder of the appropriate size. You can also place the cup on the appropriate holder and press the cup to allow the holder moving to the bottom and getting locked.

① Note!

Pressing the cup to move the cup holder to the bottom locks the cup is not suitable for soft materials (such as paper cups, soft plastic cups).



Cup holder unlock switch

Take out the water cup and press the unlock switch to make the cup holder automatically rise to the initial position.

⚠ Warning!

 Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that is not tightly covered. Otherwise, they may spill when the vehicle bumps, causing personal injury or damage to vehicle components.

- After pressing the release switch, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic ascent of the cup holder.
- The cup holder claw satisfies the normal use of the cup. Please do not use your fingers or sharp objects to collide with the cup holder claw or other unconventional operations.

! Caution!

- Do not forcibly put an inappropriate container into the cup holder, otherwise the container or vehicle parts may be damaged.
- When using the cup holder, it should be avoided that tiny items and other debris fall into the cup holder, so as to prevent the cup holder from getting stuck when lifting and lowering, affecting the use.

① Note!

In extremely low temperature environments, the automatic rise of cup holders is slow or even it may fail to rise.

Rear cup holders



Press the front end of the cup holder to make the cup holder automatically pop out.



When the rear cup holder is not in use, push the cup holder back to lock.

⚠ Warning!

Do not put hot drinks in the cup holder that are not tightly covered to prevent scalding during the moving of the vehicle.

! Caution!

Do not forcibly put an inappropriate container into the cup holder, otherwise the container or vehicle may be damaged.

① Note!

It is normal for the cup holder to pop out slowly or even unable at low temperature.

Opening/closing of glove box



Glove box switch

Click the glove box unlock switch \preceq on the front central control panel, the glove box will open automatically and the glove box indicator will be illuminated automatically.



Push the glove box back to lock it properly, and the glove box indicator will go out automatically.

⚠ Warning!

Be sure to keep the glove box closed during driving. Otherwise, it may cause harm to the passengers in the vehicle during a sudden brake or an accident.

① Note!

- If the glove box cannot be opened due to low power of the vehicle, please contact Lotus retailer.
- It is normal for the glove box to open slowly at low temperature.

Rear tunnel console pocket*



The rear tunnel console pocket is located under the rear seat centre armrest, which can be opened by pulling it out.

Rear seat backrest pocket*



The rear seat backrest pocket is located in the centre of the rear seat backrest, and is pushed down to the bottom lock; Press again and close automatically.

① Note!

In extremely low temperature environment, the rear seat backrest automatically rises slowly or even cannot rise.

Pocket under boot floor



A boot storage box is provided under the boot floor, which can be used to store driver's tools.

Press the flip handle and pull up the rear section of the cover to open the boot floor.

⚠ Warning!

After lifting the trunk floor handle, retract your hand in time to avoid pinch injuries during the automatic closing of the handle.

① Note!

 Do not let the cover fall on its own when closing, and always use your hand to hold it and close slowly. When you need to remove the boot floor as a whole, you can press the flip handle to tilt the floor at a certain angle, and then use both hands to grip the left and right edges of the floor and pull it outward. Do not pull the flip bracelet outward alone to avoid damage to the flip bracelet.

Boot load

There are hooks on the boot floor that hold the luggage in place. Before using the boot hook, flip the hook from the floor.



⚠ Warning!

 It is strictly forbidden to use inferior or damaged binding strap, otherwise it may break in the event of emergency braking or accident, and the luggage in the boot will be thrown and cause personal injury.

• It is forbidden to use hooks to secure child safety seats.

! Caution!

When using the boot hook, do not exceed the maximum tensile strength of the hook.

Bonnet storage box

The bonnet is equipped with a storage box which can be used to store articles or tools.

To **Opening of bonnet** (p.82), pull up the lock of the bonnet storage box and flip up to open the bonnet storage box.



Bonnet storage box

Coat rack



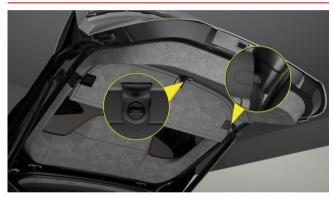
Coat rack

A coat rack is provided behind the rear seat, which can be used to put clothes, hats and other light items.

When the tailgate is open, pull out the coat rack to remove it.

⚠ Warning!

Do not place items or heavy objects that are easy to roll, otherwise it is easy to cause personal injury when braking urgently.



The fixed position of coat rack

The rear coat rack is mounted on the interior trim panel of the tailgate. You can clamp it onto the spindle at both ends, align the knob with the fixing point of the tailgate, and rotate 90° clockwise to the horizontal position to lock the coat rack.

To remove the coat rack, you can turn the knob 90° anticlockwise to the vertical position to unlock it, undo the connection between the coat rack knob and the tailgate, and then withdraw from the spindle.





Knob unlock/lock position

① Note!

- Please install the coat rack correctly, there will be a sense of block if the installation is not in place.
- The load bearing capacity of the coat rack should not exceed 5 kg, as the front flip plate has no supporting structure and cannot carry articles.
- The turning angle of the flip plate should not exceed 60°, so as not to damage the plate structure.

■ The surface of the coat rack is covered with leather, which should be kept away from sharp objects to avoid damage.

Luggage rack*



Luggage racks are located on either side of the vehicle roof.

Loading luggage or cargo on the luggage rack will cause the centre of gravity of the vehicle to be increased, which will have critical impact on vehicle handling and steering. If you need to load luggage or cargo, etc. on the roof, please follow the following instructions:

- Do not load luggage or cargo larger than 80 kg on the roof of the vehicle.
- Distribute your luggage or cargo evenly over the rack, with the heaviest items at the bottom.

- Do not touch heavy or hard objects to the roof to prevent damage to the roof.
- Please drive smoothly and avoid sharp acceleration/braking and sharp turns.

⚠ Warning!

Securely hold your luggage or cargo in place.

Center armrest

Front centre armrest

Front centre armrest



Opening/closing of front centre armrest box

The front central armrest is equipped with a storage box, and it can be opened by pressing the front central armrest switch.

Push and close the front centre armrest box cover in the opposite direction of opening.

⚠ Warning!

Be sure to keep the front centre armrest box closed during the driving, otherwise it may cause an accident and personal injury.

① Note!

It is normal for the front central armrest box cover to open slowly at low temperature.

Rear centre armrest

Rear centre armrest



The centre armrest is installed in the middle of the rear seat backrest, which can be turned down and pulled out for use, and turned up and pressed back into the backrest for closing.



There is a storage box on the rear centre armrest.

The armrest box can be opened by pressing the unlocking switch on the side of the armrest box and flipping the armrest box cover upward. To close the armrest box, just turn down the cover until it is locked.

Rear centre armrest*



Opening/closing of rear centre armrest box

The rear centre armrest is provided with a storage box which can be opened by pressing the switch.

Flip the rear centre armrest in the opposite direction until the armrest box is closed.

① Note!

It is normal for the rear central armrest box cover to open slowly at low temperature.

Towing mode*

Use an electric tow hook

Before you decide to tow a RV or trailer, you should check the relevant local regulations on motor vehicles first. As the regulations in different regions are different, you need to select a RV or trailer of the appropriate size and consult your local service provider before towing.



Electric towing hook switch

 Open the tailgate, press the electric towing hook switch in the boot until you hear the sound of the motor, and the electric towing hook will be extended automatically. After the electric towing hook is extended out, couple the RV with the towing hook and open the protective cover of the towing hook to connect the electric connector.



Electric towing hook

The electric connector equipped with this vehicle adopts a 13-core coil, and the standard used for the power outlet is ISO 11446:2004. The specific pin functions are as follows:

Pin No.	Colour	Function
1	Yellow line	Left direction indicator lamp
2	Blue line	Rear fog lamp

Pin No.	Colour	Function
3	White line	General grounding line
4	Green line	Right direction indicator lamp
5	Brown line	Right running light
6	Red line	Brake light
7	Black line	Left running light
8	Pink line	Reversing light
9	Orange line	To battery
10	Grey line	Power switching (for refrigerator)
11	Black and white line	10-pin grounding line
12	Blue and white line	Towing inspection
13	Red and white line	9-pin grounding line

⚠ Warning!

- When this function is opened, the electric tow hook will extend from the middle of the lower part of the rear bumper. Attention should be paid to the nearby area where the electric tow hook extends to avoid bumping into people or objects when the electric tow hook extends.
- Always ensure a smooth start, and avoid sudden acceleration or braking on slippery roads, to prevent losing control of the vehicle due to slipping.
- Crosswinds and rough roads may cause the vehicle to swing, seriously affecting the handling of the vehicle. If you notice slight signs of the vehicle swinging in any case, be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands and slow down.
- When a vehicle is towed, the braking distance will be increased.
 Therefore, the distance from the vehicle in front should be increased.
- When overtaking with a vehicle towed, it needs a longer distance for overtaking before returning to the original lane.
- When towing a vehicle, make sure to turn smoothly, try to avoid bumping or sudden operation of the steering wheel, and switch on the direction indicator lamps earlier.
- When towing a vehicle on a steep or long slope, the energy recovery level should be adjusted in advance. Control the

- driving speed according to the mass of the towed vehicle and the gradient of the road.
- Try to avoid parking on a slope. If unavoidable, the wedge blocks should be placed under the tyres of the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle, and the parking brake should be applied.

Caution!

- Frequent operation of the electric tow hook will cause the motor to overheat and damage, the use of electric trailer hook expansion or contraction function at room temperature, it is recommended to interval a period of time; When the temperature is too low or too high, it is recommended to extend the interval again.
- Before driving, please ensure that the tyre pressure, lights and connections of the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle are normal.
- When towing a RV or trailer, please abide by the relevant local laws and regulations, and modification without permission is strictly forbidden.
- Always ensure that the goods are securely fixed on the towed vehicle, and the towed vehicle is kept level.
- Do not tow a RV or trailer during the running-in period of a new car.

 Ensure that the electric towing hook is stowed when no RV or trailer is towed.

Additional mirrors and brackets

The outside mirrors of the towing vehicle shall meet the legal requirements. If not, please install suitable mirrors for the towing vehicle.

- Type 1: pasted on the surface of the outside mirror.
- Type 2: mount a bracket on the frame to clamp.

Technical parameter

The towing capacity of the vehicle will depend on the vehicle specifications, load, road conditions and the specifications of the vehicle to be towed, etc. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.

Item		Parameters
Maximum allowable towing mass (with braking) (kg)	Front drive motor model: TZ230XS225 Rear drive motor model: TZ230XS225	2,250

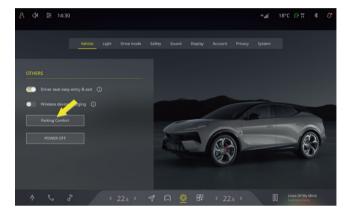
Item		Parameters
	Front drive motor model: TZ230XS225 Rear drive motor model: TZ264XY000	
Maximum allowable towing mass (without braking) (kg)		750
Dimensional limit of centre axle trailers that can be towed (length/width/height) (mm)		12,000/2,550/4,00
Static vertical load of ball head (kg)		90
Traction device rear suspension (mm)		1,182
Ball joint		Comply with ECE R55 A CLASS for ball joint size.

Parking comfort

When you park to rest, you can turn on the parking comfort function to provide you with a comfortable resting environment. After turning on the parking comfort function, the central display screen will continue to light up, and the air conditioning and multimedia functions can also be used normally.

To enable the parking comfort function, the following conditions must be met:

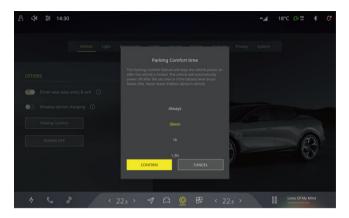
- The remaining power of the vehicle is greater than 20%.
- The vehicle power is on or the vehicle is in READY state.



Click on the 9 icon in the CSD, turn on or off the parking comfort function in the **vehicle** function setting interface.



You can also add a parking comfort button in the shortcut panel. Click the parking comfort button to quickly turn on or off the parking comfort function.



You can set the usage time of the parking comfort function according to your own needs, and set the usage time between 30 minutes and 8 hours or at irregular intervals (always on). After setting, click **Confirm** to use the parking comfort function.

When the parking comfort function is turned on or off, a pop-up window will appear on the central display screen, and the left indicator light of the status bar 60 will turn on or off.

! Caution!

During the use of the parking comfort function, when locking the vehicle inside or outside the car, the vehicle will only lock the door, but the anti-theft function will not be activated. Please do not leave the vehicle for a long time after locking to avoid unnecessary losses.

① Note!

- The parking comfort function can only be activated after the vehicle has completely stopped.
- Turn on the vehicle power, click Confirm to use the parking comfort function; when the vehicle is in the READY state, after clicking Confirm, you need to open the main driver's door, then close the main driver's door, and make the vehicle exit the READY state to use the parking comfort function.
- During the use of the parking comfort function, when you open the main driver's door, the central display screen will pop up corresponding information to remind you that the parking comfort function is in use; for every 10% decrease in the remaining battery power of the vehicle, the central display screen will pop up corresponding information to remind you to pay attention to the remaining battery power.
- During the use of the parking comfort function, if you leave and lock the vehicle, the parking comfort function will continue to work until the set time ends or the remaining battery of the vehicle is less than 20%
- The parking comfort function does not currently support remote viewing and control through a mobile app. It needs to be turned on and off on the vehicle.
- The parking comfort function is valid for a single setting.
 When the set usage time ends, the vehicle power is turned

off, or the driving is started, the parking comfort function will automatically exit. The next use requires a reset to enable it.

Exit Parking comfort

In the **Vehicle** function settings interface or shortcut panel, click **Parking comfort** again, and select **Cancel** to manually exit the parking comfort function.

During use, if the following situations occur, the parking comfort function will automatically exit:

- The set usage time timer has ended.
- The remaining power of the vehicle is less than 20%.
- The vehicle status is switched to READY state.



DRIVE

Before you drive

Driving requirements

Drivers must obtain a driving license before driving on the road.

⚠ Warning!

- The driver shall keep his/her hands on the steering wheel at all times during driving.
- The driver should not be distracted by passengers or use electronic devices while driving.
- Never drive under the influence of alcohol or drugs.
- Never drive too fast. Be sure to comply with the speed limit regulations.
- Avoid fatigued driving.
- Do not place objects in driver foot space. Install the floor mat correctly to ensure that the pedal control will not be affected during driving.
- Do not adjust the position of the display, the steering wheel, seat, and inside/outside mirrors during driving, otherwise the vehicle may get out of control.
- All passengers are prohibited from extending their arms, heads or other body parts out of the vehicle during driving.

Correct driving posture

Whether the driver's sitting posture is correct directly affects the degree of driver fatigue and the driving safety.

In order to ensure driving safety, adjustments should be made as follows before driving:

- Sit upright with your feet on the floor.
- Adjust the driver seat back and forth to make it easier for the driver to effectively operate the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal.
- Adjust the height of the headrest correctly according to your body height.
- The seat backrest should be in the upright position and the driver's back should be completely attached to the back.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that it is no less than 25 cm from the chest.
- Place the middle part of the seat belt between the neck and shoulders. Wrap the lap portion of the seat belt tightly around the hip joint (not the abdomen).

⚠ Warning!

If you get too close to the steering wheel, the airbag system cannot provide proper protection for you, which otherwise will result in injury or life risk.

Wading

Before wading, pay attention to the following matters:

- Confirm the water depth before wading, and make sure the water level does not go above the lower edge of the vehicle body. When wading through water, please be aware of water waves caused by nearby vehicles, because this may make the water level go above the lower edge of the body vehicle.
- Always pass through flooded roads at a low speed, and do not stop or drive backward in water under any circumstances.

After wading, carry out inspections as follows immediately if the vehicle is safe:

- Gently depress the brake pedal to dry the brake and check whether the brake is working properly.
- Check that the horn is working properly.
- Turn the steering wheel to check whether the steering assist is working properly.
- Check whether the exterior lamps are working properly.

Caution!

The air suspension can adjust the height of the vehicle body, when you need to wade on the road, please check the water depth of the waterlogged section first, the water level must not be higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body. After wading, it is recommended that you contact the Lotus retailer for inspection and maintenance as soon as possible.

Drive

Power on/off

Power on

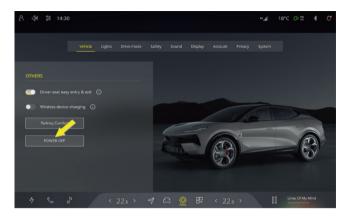
After using the valid key to unlock the car and opening the doors, the instrument cluster and the CSD will light up, and the car will automatically power on.

Power off

• Conventional power off

In the P gear, if you have closed all doors (including the hood and the tailgate) and are about to leave the vehicle with the valid key, you can power off the vehicle in the following ways:

- lock the vehicle with the key.
- If the driver door is not opened within 5 minutes, the vehicle will automatically turn off the power.
- CSD power off



Tap the @ icon on the CSD and tap **POWER OFF** in the **Vehicle** function setting interface, and the vehicle will power off after a period of time.

① Note!

- Turn off the power through the central screen display, which can be recovered by depressing the brake pedal.
- When the vehicle has no network signal, try to turn off the power for more than 10 minutes and then turn on the power again. If there is still no network signal, please contact the Lotus retailer.
- Emergency power off



Low-voltage MSD cable

- 1. Low-voltage MSD (manual service disconnect) cable
- 2. Low-voltage MSD (manual service disconnect) plug
- Open the hood and disconnect the low-voltage MSD plug, then the car will be powered off automatically.
- In an emergency, you can open the hood to cut off the low-voltage MSD cable and the vehicle will be powered off automatically.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate under the hood until the car automatically turns off the power supply for 3 minutes.

① Note!

During the vehicle power off, you hear a sound response, which is a normal phenomenon caused by the braking system when it is working on a self-test this is not a failure.

Start

Vehicle starting with key fob/UWB digital key

The driver can enter the vehicle with the key fob/UWB digital key carried, and depress the brake pedal to start the vehicle. If the gear is shifted to R or D position, the car is in driving mode.

⚠ Warning!

To avoid any unintended acceleration, you must press the brake pedal to shift into D or R.

① Note!

- The key fob will enter the sleep mode after being stationary in the car for a period of time, and it is ineffective to start the vehicle at this time until it returns to normal after being moved.
- When the vehicle is in drivable mode, the READY indicator on instrument cluster will be illuminated.

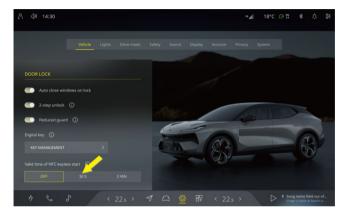
- During charging, the car cannot be started by depressing the brake pedal, and the instrument cluster will display s^{CF} and relevant prompt information.
- If the brake pedal is not depressed to shift, the prompt "Please depress the brake pedal to release the gear lever" will be displayed on instrument cluster.
- After the instrument cluster shows that the key fob battery is low capacity, please replace battery in time. refer to Replacement of key fob battery (p.61).

Card key/NFC digital key to start the vehicle



Starting with card key

According to your usage habits, you can click on the licon on the central control screen, select **Vehicle** - **Valid time of NFC keyless** start set the NFC authentication free time.



When you unlock the vehicle using the card key/NFC digital key, you can start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal during the NFC authentication free period. If the NFC authentication free time has passed and the vehicle has not been started, the central display screen will prompt accordingly. The card key/NFC digital key needs to be placed in the wireless charging induction area, and the vehicle can only be started after pressing the brake pedal. Switch gears to R or D, and the vehicle is in a drivable state.

① Note!

If you need to use the wireless charging function of your phone, you can place the card key in another position on the vehicle.

Shift operation

Flick the gear lever to switch to different gears, while the corresponding gear information is displayed on the instrument cluster.



Gear lever

Caution!

Switch to gear P/R/D under the following conditions:

- The speed is less than 3 km/h and it can switch to P gear.
- When the vehicle is driving forward, the speed is less than 8 km/h and it can switch to R gear.
- When the vehicle is driving backwards, the speed is less than 8 km/h and it can switch to D gear.

It is recommended that you press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle before shifting gears.

Reverse (R)

When the vehicle is parked, press the brake pedal, long toggle the gear lever forward and release it, and switch gears to R.

Neutral (N)

When the gear is in D or R, the lever is flicked forward or backwards shortly and the gear switches to N.



When the vehicle runs at a speed greater than 3 km/h, it will take a long time to shift from D or R gear to N gear, and simultaneously the instrument cluster will display texts accompanied by audible sounds.

Drive (D)

When the vehicle is parked, press the brake pedal, long toggle the gear lever backwards and release it, and switch gears to D.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is engaged into P gear, the brake pedal must be depressed for shifting to another gear.
- The reversing light is turned on when the R gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal must be depressed to prevent the vehicle from slipping when the N gear is engaged.
- When the D or R gear is engaged, the vehicle will move forward/ backwards slowly while the brake pedal is released and the accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- When the vehicle is in D gear, opening the main driving door, keeping the brake on, and switching the P-gear vehicle will issue a warning alarm, and accompanied by text prompts on the central display screen.

Park (P)



After the vehicle is parked, press the P button, the gear switches to P gear, and the electronic parking brake is automatically activated.

When the gear is switched to a non-P gear, the EPB is automatically released.

Under the non-charging state, when all the following conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically switch to the park (P) gear:

- The vehicle in READY state, the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the current gear is not P.
- When any two of the following conditions are met: the driver door is opened, the driver seat belt is unfastened, and/or the driver seat sensor does not detect occupancy.
- The accelerator pedal and brake pedal are depressed illegally.

Under the charging state, when all the following conditions are met, the vehicle will automatically switch to the park (P) gear:

- The vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the current gear is not P.
- The charging plug is connected.

① Note!

Before leaving the vehicle or when parking on a slope, please ensure that the P gear is engaged to prevent the vehicle from slipping.

If the service brake on the vehicle that is running at a speed higher than 3 km/h fails, pressing and holding the P gear button will trigger the emergency brake function, and releasing the P gear button will release the brake. If the vehicle speed is still higher than 3 km/h after releasing the P gear button, the current gear D/N/R remains unchanged; When the speed is reduced to 3 km/h or below, if the P gear button is still not released, the gear will automatically switch to P.

Ejection start*

Some models have ejection start function. After the ejection start is activated, the vehicle can provide the maximum traction to improve driving experience.

⚠ Warning!

Ejection start is recommended in a closed road section. The driver and passengers are not in a state of physical discomfort. At the same time, ensure that the front and surrounding environment are free of any potential risk of interfering with vehicle operation.

Ejection start preparation

All of the following conditions must be met to achieve ejection start:

- After the vehicle is powered on, there is no fault alarm.
- The high voltage battery level is more than or equivalent to 20% SOC.
- The high voltage battery system temperature is within a reasonable range.
- All doors are closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- Towing mode is not activated.

① Note!

If the ambient temperature is too low or too high, the low temperature battery preheating function and the battery insulation function can be used respectively to keep the high voltage battery at the appropriate working temperature.

Operation of ejection start

Ejection start can be achieved by following steps:

- 1. When the vehicle stops stably, shift into P gear and switch the driving mode to Sports mode or Track mode.
- Depress the brake pedal with the left foot to return the steering wheel.
- 3. Shift the gear into the drive (D) gear, and ensure that the vehicle does not activate the AUTO HOLD and the electronic calliper is in the released state.
- 4. Turn off the electronic stability control (ESC).
- 5. Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot while keeping the brake pedal depressed, and wait for the vehicle head to lift up to complete the launch preparation. After the launch preparation is completed, the instrument cluster will display the text prompt of launch mode activation.
- 6. Release the brake pedal within 4 seconds, and the motor will output the maximum torque to achieve ejection start.

① Note!

During the initiation of the ejection start, the launch function will exit in any of the following cases:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Release the accelerator pedal.

• Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) is activated.

Limitations of the ejection start

Ejection start can only be used when the ambient temperature is higher than 3°C. The interval between the two ejection starts shall be more than or equal to 5 minutes, and the number of ejection starts during a single driving (calculated from vehicle power-on to power-off) shall be less than or equal to 3 times.

Acoustic vehicle alerting system

Electric vehicles produce relatively low noise when running. This vehicle is equipped with an acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) that can alert nearby pedestrians.

Acoustic vehicle alerting system is enabled by default and cannot be turned off.

Active rear spoiler*

The active rear spoiler mainly provides down force to counteract the lift caused by airflow during driving, so that the vehicle has better grip. The position can be switched according to the operation scene to reduce wind resistance or increase down force.

Manual control of the active rear spoiler opening or closing

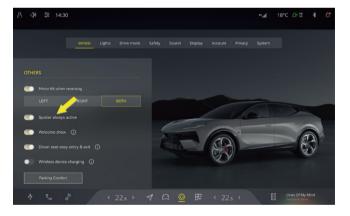


Active rear wing control interface

Click the \Box icon in the CSD, select the active rear spoiler switch to manually open or close the active rear spoiler.



You can manually adjust the active rear spoiler by clicking on different gears.



Click the icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to open the **Spoiler always active**, when the spoiler always active is turned on, the active rear spoiler of the vehicle will remain in the position set before the power is turned off. When the spoiler always active is closed, the active rear spoiler of the vehicle will automatically turn off

⚠ Warning!

- When manually opening or closing the active rear spoiler, please ensure that there are no obstacles around the wing. Do not put your hands or any objects between the moving active rear spoiler and the body to prevent pinching or damaging the active rear spoiler.
- The active rear spoiler has an anti-clip function, but there is no anti-clip function at the end of about 4mm.

L Caution!

- Do not pull the vehicle by the active rear spoiler or push.
- When using the automatic car wash function, please close the active rear spoiler, otherwise it may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Please clean up the fallen leaves and other foreign matters under the active rear spoiler to prevent them from entering the drain pipe after decay, resulting in poor drainage or blockage.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler can be manually adjusted; when the vehicle is running at a speed above 30km/h, the active rear spoiler adjustment interface of the CSD becomes grey to deactivate the manual adjustment of active rear wing.
- The active rear spoiler has a memory function. If the active rear spoiler is manually set to P1 or P2 before the vehicle turns off the power, the active rear spoiler will return to the position set when the power was turned off last time after the vehicle turns off the power.

Automatic activation of the active rear spoiler (with flaps)

Set the active rear spoiler mode in Individual mode:

- Tour mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 160 km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.
- Sport mode: when the vehicle is running at a speed above 110 km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in range mode/tour mode/off-road mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 160km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

When the driving mode is in sport mode/track mode:

- When the vehicle is running at a speed below 30 km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically return to the manually set position;
- When the vehicle is running at a speed above 110 km/h, the active rear spoiler will automatically move to a position providing high stability.

Caution!

Please observe local laws and regulations for safe driving and do not exceed the speed limit.

Air suspension

Convenient loading function

The vehicle is equipped with an adjustable air suspension system that selects an appropriate level of damping for each wheel depending on the driving conditions. The system automatically balances load changes and maintains a constant height during driving. The driving safety, agility and comfort are optimised.



Boot suspension adjustment switch

- After the vehicle has stopped, open the tailgate and press the down button on the side of the boot. The rear of the vehicle can be lowered to the loading height for easy loading.
- After the loading is completed, press the up button on the side of the boot or close the tailgate. When the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the air suspension system will automatically rise to the vehicle body height.

⚠ Warning!

When using the convenient loading function, make sure that there is enough height under the tailgate, the tailgate may hit the head or objects during the rear body lowering.

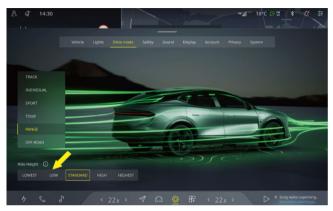
Caution!

Frequent height adjustments may cause the air spring compressor to overheat and the regulation function to fail. After the air spring compressor has cooled completely, it automatically adjusts to the selected horizontal height.

① Note!

After the vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the air suspension system of the vehicle will only raise the body to the previous body height if the vehicle is driven smoothly without heavy braking/acceleration or excessive steering wheel steering.

Manually adjust the vehicle body height



Suspension setting interface on CSD

You can click the @ icon on the CSD, and select the **Drive mode** to enter the body height adjustment interface, where multiple heights can be set according to your needs.

① Note!

- The suspension height can only be manually adjusted when the doors, hood, and tailgate are securely closed, and the steering angle should not be excessively large during the adjustment.
- Only certain driving modes allow for manual suspension height adjustment.

Automatically adjust the vehicle body height

The air suspension can automatically adjust the body height based on different driving modes and changes in the current vehicle speed.

① Note!

After the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h, the **HIGHEST** body height option is not available; After the vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h, the **HIGH** body height option is not available; After the vehicle speed exceeds 110 km/h, the **STANDARD** body height option is not available.

Off-road mode: when the driving mode is switched to Off-road mode, the body height is automatically adjusted to a **HIGH** height to achieve comfortable passage through rough roads. The body height can only be manually selected as **HIGH** or **HIGHEST**.

Sport mode: when the driving mode is switched to Sport mode, the body height is automatically adjusted to a **LOW** height, increasing vehicle stability and reducing energy consumption. The body height can only be manually selected as **LOW** and **LOWEST**. During driving, the body height is always kept at low level no matter how the speed of the vehicle changes.

Range mode: when the driving mode is switched to the range mode, the air suspension will automatically adjust the body to a low level height; When the speed exceeds a certain speed, the body will automatically reduce to the minimum.

Tour mode: when the driving mode is switched to tour mode from any mode, the air suspension will automatically maintain the body height at a normal height level, meeting the general driving needs of the driver when passing through urban roads or ordinary roads.

Track mode*: when the driving mode is switched to Race mode, the body height is automatically adjusted to a **LOWEST** height, there is no manually selected option for the body height. The body height should always be kept at low level no matter how the speed of the vehicle changes. Then the spring stiffness and stability of the vehicle in Track mode are improved, thereby improving vehicle's controllability.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle needs to lift, be sure to select the jack mode in the maintenance interface of CSD, and turn off the air spring automatic adjustment. If the auto-adjustment is not turned off, the air suspension automatically adjusts the lifting and lowering, causing serious damage.
- When the body height is lower than the height corresponding to the driving mode or there is a low air spring pressure alarm, please stop at a safe place and contact the Lotus retailer. If you continue to drive, the vehicle may be damaged.

Caution!

When the vehicle needs to use the tow hook to tow other vehicles into **Towing mode** (p.183). The air springs are automatically adjusted to a specific height and load compensation to realize the towing function.

Drive mode

- Sport mode: this mode meets the driver's more intense driving needs, and has a sensitive dynamic response.
- Tour mode: it is a default drive mode, in which the driver can obtain a comfortable dynamic experience.
- Range mode: reduce energy consumption, meet daily driving requirements and improve driving range.
- Off-road mode: a higher suspension will be realized in this mode, which is applicable to suburban, fields, grass, road covered by slight slow, etc.
- Individual mode: you can choose distinct suspension height and steering mode via different drive mode according to your personal preference in this mode. Thereby have more fun in driving.

⚠ Warning!

For your own safety and the safety of passengers and the vehicle, observe the following points:

- Familiarise yourself with the vehicle before starting a journey.
- Do not take any risks when driving.
- Adjust speed to the road conditions. The steeper and more uneven the road, the slower the speed should be.
- Avoid contact between the body and the ground.

L Caution!

Objects on unpaved surfaces, for example stones or branches, can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of material damage. Do not drive on unpaved surfaces.

Switching the drive mode on the CSD



You can click the @ icon in the CSD and select the **Drive mode** interface to switch.

Track mode*

The vehicle exhibits extraordinary power response and dynamic driving performance in track mode. Therefore, the Track mode shall be applied with caution when driving on common roads.



You can choose to activate or deactivate the Variable Traction Control (VTC) in Track mode. If the VTC is activated, you can set the traction control level.

⚠ Warning!

As the traction control level degrades, the probability of vehicle slip will gradually increase. Therefore, the traction control level must be set reasonably to avoid accidents or damages to the vehicle. It is recommended that you set to a level that can ensure safety to the **HIGHER** extent.

Frequent forced braking and short cooling time during track driving will cause the brake disc to be hot, which will affect the performance of the braking system. Therefore, it is necessary to leave some time

to allow the vehicle cooling down during track driving and before leaving the track. Drive the vehicle at a lower speed, and utilize air flow to cool the vehicle without forced braking and parking brake. If you want to drive on the track, please consult the Lotus retailer first for more necessary guidance.

Under more extreme driving conditions, if the brake disc temperature is too high, the instrument will prompt "Traction Control temporarily, unavailable". At this time, please refer to the cooling method for track conditions to allow the vehicle cooling down.

Switching the drive mode via the drive mode paddle



Drive mode paddle

The drive modes can be switched by turning the drive mode paddle on the right side of the steering wheel up and down.



Track mode is not recommended for use on motorway.

Steering mode

Electronic power assisted steering (EPAS) system

The EPAS provides assistance when the driver turns the steering wheel, enhancing vehicle's controllability and stability, improving steering handiness.



Steering mode setting interface

You can click the icon on the CSD, select the **Drive mode**, and enter the steering mode setting interface in individual mode, where the haptics and sensitivity of the steering system can be adjusted.

- Tour mode: ensure the sensitivity of the steering wheel while taking into account the road feedback, improve the manipulativeness of the daily car.
- Sport Mode: increases the force required to turn the steering wheel and increases the sensitivity of the direction. The vehicle gives a quicker response when driving at a high speed, which provides an excellent driving experience.

① Note!

When switching to different driving modes, the steering mode will be automatically switched to the corresponding mode.

Rear wheel steering (RWS)*

Rear wheel steering (RWS) helps reduce the turning radius when parked at low speeds. When driving dynamically, vehicle stability and steering sensitivity are improved in a timely manner.

Driving mode

The vehicle is driven in four-wheel driving mode, that is, four wheels are driven at the same time, thus increasing traction.

To better improve the flexibility of the vehicle, the power ratio of the front and rear axles will be automatically distributed when the vehicle enters or exits a curve, thus achieving more stable and efficient curve driving performance, and guaranteeing the stability of the vehicle to the greatest extent even in severe driving.

The four-wheel driving mode improves the driving stability of the vehicle on wet and slippery roads, and realizes smooth acceleration and good comfort.

The drive performance of all wheels varies depending on the selected driving mode.

Active grille shutter (AGS)

The AGS automatically adjusts the grille opening, thereby reducing unnecessary heat dissipation from the bonnet. It quickly increases the coolant temperature during cold start of the vehicle and maintains the coolant within an appropriate working temperature during driving, thereby improving the mechanical performance of the vehicle and the effect of heater at low temperatures.

⚠ Warning!

 Please ensure that there are no obstacles around the AGS, and do not put your hands or any objects into the moving AGS to prevent pinching or damage to the AGS. AGS has anti pinch function, but there is no anti pinch function around 4mm at the end.

Caution!

Please slow down and drive at a speed ≤30 km/h when wading, otherwise the AGS will be easily damaged.



Symmetrical distribution of AGS

The AGS of the vehicle will be automatically turned on/off in any of the following usage scenarios:

- When the vehicle is locked, the AGS will be kept off.
- When proximity unlocking of the vehicle is enabled, the AGS will be turned on and off automatically once.

- When there are needs for air volume, the AGS will be automatically turned on.
- When the ambient temperature is too high, the AGS will be automatically turned on and kept on.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds 150 km/h, the AGS will be turned on automatically.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.



Click the @ icon in the CSD, and select **Vehicle** \rightarrow **MAINTENANCE** to check the tyre status.

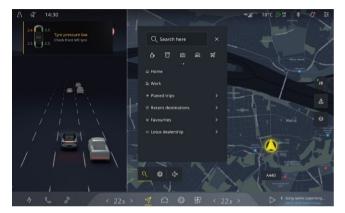
■ Tyre over-temperature, tyre leakage, low sensor power alarm

When the alarm of tyre over-temperateure, tyre leakage and low sensor power is activated, a prompt message will pop up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be shown in yellow in the CSD.

■ Low tyre pressure alarm

When the low tyre pressure alarm is activated, the TPMS status indicator (!) will be illuminated on the instrument cluster, a prompt message will pop up and the corresponding tyre triggering the alarm will be shown in yellow in the CSD. After the tyre is inflated

to the standard tyre pressure value in the cold state, the low tyre pressure alarm will disappear.



⚠ Warning!

- Should the TPMS status indicator (!) light up or blink while driving, safely park the car and reach out to a Lotus dealer.
 Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

 Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.



tyre pressure label

① Note!

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label.

- The TPMS can not provide an early indication of rapid tyre damage caused by external factors (e.g., burst), nor does it identify the natural, uniform pressure loss of all tyres over a long period of time.
- The TPMS receives the tyre pressure data after the vehicle is stopped and powered on again, and can update the real-time tyre pressure value only after the vehicle runs at a speed of 30 km/h for several minutes.
- During the driving process, the tyre monitor system collects data every once in a while, so there is a delay in displaying the tyre pressure value.
- Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

TPMS fault alarm

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

① Note!

- Only tyres with specifications provided by Lotus are allowed to be used as replacements, otherwise the TPMS may not work properly.
- Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Safe parking

Safe parking can prevent vehicle damage or safety accidents caused by improper operation. When you need to park safely, please follow the following steps:

- 1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- 2. After the vehicle is stopped, engage in P gear, at this time the EPB will be automatically activated, the P indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, as will the EPB indicator.
- 3. Release the brake pedal.
- 4. Be sure to take away all valid keys when leaving the vehicle.

- Make sure that everyone in the vehicle, especially children, is out of the vehicle.
- 6. Lock the vehicle.

Caution!

- When parking on the uphill/downhill, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding environment, and check whether the vehicle is parked stably to prevent it from slipping.
- Observe the relevant legal regulations when parking.

Braking system

Energy recovery

While the vehicle is moving, the driver can improve the driving experience by adjusting the energy recuperation, while the motor participates in braking to reduce braking heat loss and thus improve energy consumption.

• Coasting energy recovery

The coasting energy is recovered when the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal are released.

• Braking energy recovery

The braking energy is recovered when the driver depresses the brake pedal.

Factors affecting energy recovery efficiency

The energy recovery efficiency depends on the following factors:

- Current power and temperature of the high-voltage battery.
- Energy recovery levels.

Energy recovery levels



Energy recovery levels

- 1. Energy recovery levels
- 2. Energy recovery paddle

You can adjust the energy recovery level via the upper/lower energy recovery paddle on the left side of steering wheel.

The energy recovery level is adjustable in four gears, the default energy recovery level of the vehicle is low. Press "REGEN +" to

increase energy recovery level to high; Press "REGEN -" to lower the energy recovery level to off.

The energy recovery level defaults to third gear each time the vehicle is started.

L Caution!

The regenerative braking with energy recovery is not a substitute for braking to ensure safety. The driver should apply the brakes in time according to the actual situation.

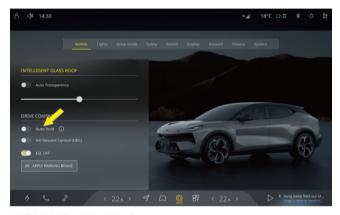
① Note!

When the power battery is fully charged, the battery temperature is too low or too high, the energy recovery braking will temporarily weaken and increase with the vehicle's driving. Please pay attention to the combination instrument prompt and maintain a safe braking distance.

AUTO HOLD

With the AUTO HOLD switch on, if the vehicle needs to be stopped for a short time, depress the brake pedal deeply after the vehicle stops in case of flat and downhill roads, then its indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated and AUTO HOLD will be activated. In case of uphill road, there is no need to continue depressing the brake pedal, as the AUTO HOLD will be activated

automatically with its indicator illuminated on the instrument cluster and it will apply the brake for you to keep the vehicle stopped. When you start driving by depressing the accelerator pedal, the AUTO HOLD will be automatically deactivated.



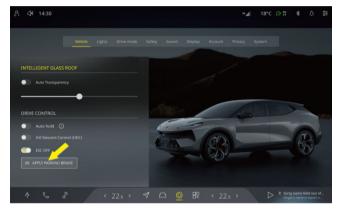
AUTO HOLD setting interface

You can click @ icon in CSD to select the **Vehicle** and enable AUTO HOLD.

To deactivate the AUTO HOLD, click the control button on the CSD again.

Electronic parking brake(EPB)

Enabling/disabling EPB



Electronic parking brake(EPB) switch

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic parking brake (EPB), which is automatically activated/deactivated with the change of vehicle gear. Tap the icon on central screen display (CSD) and select **Vehicle** to turn on/off the EPB.

 When the stationary vehicle is engaged into P gear, the EPB indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, indicating that the EPB is activated. When you depress the brake pedal and move the gear lever in D or R position for a stationary vehicle, the EPB indicator on the instrument cluster will go out, indicating that the EPB is deactivated.

□ Caution!

If the indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, the vehicle cannot park normally or the EPB is released, you can try to shift gears. If the indicator still flashes, contact the Lotus retailer immediately for maintenance.

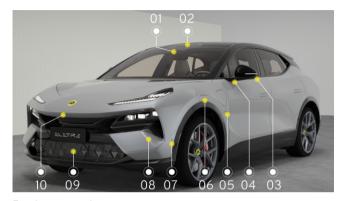
Intelligent driving system

Sensors and cameras

Sensors of driving assist system

The car is equipped with a variety of radars and cameras, which are used to detect the distance from the vehicle ahead, identify traffic or road signs, and detect surrounding vehicles, pedestrians, etc.

Front sensor and camera



Front sensor and camera

- Front camera
- 2. Front LiDAR*
- 3. Left/right surround camera
- 4. Outside front camera
- 5. Outside rear camera
- 6. Left/right front side LiDAR*
- 7. Left/right long range ultrasonic radar
- 8. Left/right detection radar
- 9. Front imaging radar
- 10. Front surround camera

Rear sensor and camera



Rear sensor and camera

- 1. Rear LiDAR*
- 2. Rear camera
- 3. Rear surround camera
- 4. Left/right side detection radar
- 5. Rear long range ultrasonic radar

Caution!

Laser irradiation of the cameras will cause irreversible damage. The camera should be avoided by laser irradiation. If a camera fails, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for maintenance.

① Note!

- When there is dirt or snow on any of the cameras, radars or the surrounding areas, a warning message will pop up on the CSD. If the warning message on the instrument cluster does not disappear after the dirt or snow is removed, park the car safely and contact your Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- When the road conditions on the left and right carriageways of the road on which you are driving on are quite different, the radar detection may be affected, leading to a warning message popping up on the instrument cluster.
- Keep the front windshield clean and dry. Do not apply a metallic film to the front windshield as this could interfere with the operation of vehicle electronic devices.
- Repair or replacement of the driver assist system and its components must be done by qualified technicians using professional equipment, so you must contact the Lotus service centre for any such repairs.

Enabling lidar*

The LiDAR can be deployed automatically through the welcome function (performed at startup) and the activation of highway assist (HWA). It can also be deployed manually via the CSD.



Open **Welcome show** (p.107) and when the vehicle is unlocked, the LiDAR will automatically unfold and fold up.

⚠ Warning!

When deploying or retracting the LiDAR, ensure that there are no obstacles around it. Do not put your hands or any objects near the LiDAR as it deploys or retracts to prevent a pinching injury or damaging the LiDAR.

L Caution!

- The LiDAR should be turned off and folded away before washing the car to prevent damage to components.
- In cold weather, do not wash the LiDAR with a water jet for a long time or intentionally introduce water into the LiDAR

mounting gap. The LiDAR could become frozen and therefore unable to extend normally.



HWA switch

The front LiDAR can be deployed when the HWA is activated via the multi-function button on the left of the steering wheel. Refer to (p.227).

When the vehicle is locked and powered off, or the HWA is not used for more than 6 minutes, the LiDAR will fold away.



When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, you can manually unfold all the LiDARs with one touch as needed. The LiDAR cannot be deployed manually in any of the following conditions:

- The gear lever is not in P position.
- A LiDAR component has malfunctioned.
- The LiDAR is being automatically deployed or retracted.
- The LiDAR is being washed.
- The vehicle is bring driven.

Cleaning the LiDAR*



When the vehicle is powered on and the gear lever is in the P position, the front LiDAR can be cleaned manually with one touch as needed. The LiDAR cannot be cleaned manually in any of the following conditions:

- The gear lever is not in P position.
- A LiDAR component has malfunctioned.
- The LiDAR is being deployed or retracted.
- The vehicle is being driven.

① Note!

- To prolong the service life of the LiDAR components, do not use the manual wash and manual unfold functions repeatedly within a short period of time.
- If there is air in the washer fluid tube, water may not be sprayed out by the washer. In this case, try to turn on the wash function several times to bleed the air, and the function will return to normal.
- The LiDAR wash function may consume a lot of washer fluid. Therefore, ensure that the washer fluid is sufficiently topped up before using the function. If the instrument cluster displays that the washer fluid level is low, the washing performance will be degraded or the washer may not be usable at all.
- If white foam is generated during the cleaning of the LiDAR, wipe off the foam to avoid blocking your line of sight. It is recommended to replace the detergent with low foam detergent.

Limitations of sensors of driver assist system

The drive assistance system sensors have certain limitations. In daily car use, you must pay attention to the following conditions, or the drive assistance system may not work properly:

 Do not attach accessories (such as registration plate decorative frames, decals, etc.) to the radars, cameras and their surrounding areas, as the efficient range of the sensors may be affected, causing part of the drive assistance system fail to operate normally.

- Adverse weather conditions, such as heavy snow, rain, fog, etc., may weaken the sensors or cause the system to temporarily stop working.
- Intense light, reflections on the road, icy or snow-covered roads, water on the road, dirty roads or blurred lane markings may significantly reduce the ability of the camera to identify vehicles, pedestrians, traffic signs or other obstacles.
- The radars may be subject to interference from other radio devices or strong radar reflections, thus generating false warnings or reducing detection accuracy.
- In some cases, the radar may detect vehicles later than expected or fail to detect a vehicle.
- When you are driving on a winding, narrow, steep road or driving into or out of tunnels, the radars may not be able to detect vehicles or other obstacles ahead.
- Do not hit the sensors and their surrounding areas hard.
- If there are cracks, scratches or stone chips in the bumper area around a radar sensor, the function may be affected.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) can keep your vehicle running at a speed within 0-150km/h and control the speed of your vehicle

according to the set target speed and following distance to the vehicle in front. It can provide driving assistance for you when you are driving on roads with good road conditions such as motorways, thereby reducing driving fatigue.

⚠ Warning!

- ACC is an auxiliary function that cannot replace you in driving or avoiding collisions. The maximum deceleration of ACC is limited, and it is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- ACC can adjust the vehicle speed smoothly based on vehicle status and traffic conditions ahead. The system may fail to apply the brake in an emergency. When necessary, you should take the initiative to take braking when required to do so.
- ACC is not usable in all driving scenarios, traffic weather and road conditions.
- You must intervene and override the vehicle immediately if ACC fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Repair or replacement of ACC and its components requires professional equipment and technicians, so you must contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for any such repairs.
- ACC may fail to recognize animals, pedestrians, traffic signs (such as cones, water horses, signs, etc.), unusually-shaped vehicles, vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped cargoes or

- small vehicles such as bicycles, tricycles and motorcycles. ACC may also fail to recognize slow-moving, stationary or approaching vehicles or other stationary objects.
- Do not use ACC in environments with poor driving conditions, such as heavily congested traffic roads with water or slush, heavy rain and snow, poor visibility, windy conditions or driving on steep roads.
- In situations where the lighting conditions are not ideal at night or the road's lighting is cluttered and chaotic, it may lead to misidentification, missed recognition, or inaccurate recognition of the target by the camera, resulting in misbraking, failure to brake or delayed braking of ACC. In this situation, you need to use the ACC function with caution, keep your attention on the road and be ready to take over the vehicle at any time.
- ACC will not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane in which your vehicle is being driven.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the target identification of ACC.
- When another vehicle changes lanes in front of your vehicle,
 ACC may not have time to respond, requiring you to apply the brakes.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for ACC to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In

- these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply the brakes.
- When you are driving on a winding road, the identification of a target may be delayed or inaccurate, which may cause ACC to brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- On a road with sharp turns, the ACC may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead as normal due to the limitations of the camera or radar, in which case, the vehicle may accelerate unexpectedly, so you need to override the vehicle appropriately according to the actual situation in front of you.
- When a vehicle in the adjacent lane ahead cuts in front of your vehicle, detection may be affected or delayed in some conditions. The reflection intensity from the target may be too small in the case of smaller vehicles, or electromagnetic interference could momentarily interrupt detection. As a result, ACC may fail to identify the target or it may calculate the distance to the vehicle ahead inaccurately. In this case, there may be no ACC response or the braking may be delayed, so you need to be prepared to override the vehicle.

■ If ACC fails, the of icon will be shown in grey to remind you to override the vehicle.

Take care when installing the front registration plate frame. A large metal registration plate frame will affect the output of ACC radar signal, which may lead to incorrect processing of driving data or a false warning given by the radar.



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- 3. Vehicle in front
- 4. Following distance

The following distance refers to the time required for your vehicle, at its current speed, to reach the current position of the vehicle ahead.



No target vehicle ahead is detected.



When ACC is not activated, a target vehicle appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



ACC is active and a target is selected within a safe distance.

When ACC is active, you can change the following distance which is displayed on the instrument cluster. Three values are available (near, medium and far). The selected value is memorized for next drives.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance and take braking actions in a timely manner if necessary.

- ACC can control your vehicle to accelerate and decelerate.
 When the vehicle is decelerating, the brake system starts to work and may make a sound, which is normal.
- When your vehicle is following the vehicle ahead under the control of ACC and the following distance is too close, the autonomous emergency braking (AEB) may be triggered.

Activate ACC



Left multi-function button

When the vehicle is stationary, you can activate ACC with the following steps:

- 1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the of icon is displayed in white, and ACC enters ready mode.
- 2. Depress the brake pedal or activate the AUTO HOLD function.
- 3. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the of icon is displayed in blue.
- 4. After the brake pedal is released, scroll up the left multifunction button or gently step the accelerator pedal, then ACC will control the car to start and run at set target speed.

When the vehicle is running, you can activate the ACC in the following steps:

- 1. Scroll the left multi-function button leftwards to switch to ACC, the of icon is displayed in white and ACC enters ready mode.
- 2. Press the left multi-function button to activate ACC, the sticon is displayed in blue.

① Note!

When the car is running at a speed below 30 km/h, the speed set for cruising is 30 km/h; when the car is running at a speed above 30 km/h, the speed set for cruising is the current speed.

Adjusting ACC



Adjusting ACC

- Left multi-function button
- 2. Following distance button

When ACC is activated, you can set different target speeds and following distance as required:

Target speed: when you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button briefly, the target speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h. When you scroll up or down on the left multifunction button heavily, the target speed will increase or decrease in steps of 1 km/h.

① Note!

When ACC and Automatic speed limit alarm are turned on at the same time, after Automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the road traffic speed limit sign, you can tap the recognized speed limit sign on the CSD to quickly set the target speed.

Following distance: scroll up or down the following distance button to increase or decrease the following distance(The interface displays one grid, which means that the distance from the car in front is closer, two grids, second, and three grids indicate that the distance from the car in front is farther).

⚠ Warning!

Always keep your car at a safe distance from other vehicles. If the following distance is close, personal injury or vehicle damage may occur in the event of a traffic accident.

① Note!

- When no target vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC will control the subject vehicle to drive at the set target speed.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed, the vehicle will accelerate temporarily. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will decelerate slowly to the set target speed.

- If the vehicle speed is not changed significantly with the ACC in operation, it may be because acceleration is not permitted due to the set following distance.
- The higher the vehicle speed, the longer the following distance is.

Avoid overtaking on the right



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the avoid overtaking on the right.

When driving on a highway with ACC function activated, if the adjacent lane of your vehicle is a designated fast lane, your vehicle will be prohibited from overtaking the target vehicle with a speed greater than 85km/h in front of the adjacent fast lane.

Adjust speed to route



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the adjust speed to route.

Under ACC function activation, the function will adjust the vehicle speed based on the upcoming road type and information, such as automatically slowing down when the vehicle approaches a roundabout.

Automatic speed adjustment



Click the \circ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the automatic speed adjustment.

After enabling automatic speed limit fusion, under the condition of ACC function activation:

When a new speed limit is recognized, it will be displayed on the left side of CSD. The speed limit will be automatically synchronized as the ACC target speed.

Deactivating ACC

Pressing the multi-function button on the left side of the steering wheel or pressing the brake pedal, the ACC will be temporarily

deactivated, the icon 😽 will be white and the ACC will enter ready mode.

ACC is automatically deactivated when any of the following occurs:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- The wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The EPB is activated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to accelerate for more than 3 min or the speed exceeds 155 km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.
- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to off-road mode or track mode.
- The HDC is activated.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After ACC is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Restoring ACC

When ACC enters ready mode, scroll up the left multi-function button, ACC will be reactivated, and the officion turn blue.

Follow-up in cruising

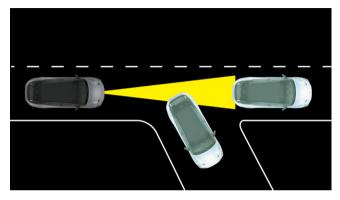
When ACC controls your car to follow the vehicle ahead, if the vehicle ahead decelerates gradually to stop, your car will also decelerates gradually to stop as the vehicle ahead dose, with a safe distance maintained all the time.



For a short period after stopping, the ACC can automatically follow the vehicle ahead and control the subject vehicle to start.

Change the target vehicle

When the adaptive cruise control (ACC) controls the subject vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead, if a vehicle cuts in from other lanes and moves between the subject vehicle and the vehicle ahead, the ACC will automatically select the vehicle as the new target vehicle. The following distance will also be adjusted based on the new target vehicle.



When ACC is activated, if the target vehicle your car follows suddenly turns and there is another stationary vehicle ahead, the system may not make any response to the stationary vehicle and may accelerate to the set target speed. At this point, you must actively pressed the brake pedal to brake and slow down your vehicle.

Limitations of ACC

The ACC is mainly suitable for driving on smooth roads. When ACC is used when driving downhill on steep slopes or with heavy loads, it may be difficult to maintain the correct following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Highway assist (HWA)*

The highway assist (HWA) can actively control the speed of the subject vehicle within $0\sim150$ km/h and provide steering assistance according to the set target speed and following distance between vehicles. At low speed, HWA can control your vehicle to follow the target vehicle if any of the lane lines is blocked or invisible.



Reminder to hold steering wheel

With HWA on, when the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster; If the system still does not detect the driver holding the steering wheel, a prompt for holding the steering wheel will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder; If the

driver is still not detected holding the steering wheel, a prompt for taking over the vehicle will be displayed on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible reminder.

■ Minimum risk manoeuver (MRM)

If the driver continues to ignore take over override prompt, a text alarm will be displayed on the instrument cluster to remind the driver to take over the vehicle, and the HWA will perform a minimum risk maneuver, which brakes the car smoothly to a full stop.

After the instrument cluster prompts that HWA has exited, you need to scroll up/down the button on the left of steering wheel to restore HWA.

⚠ Warning!

- HWA is only an auxiliary function, and the steering force provided by this function is only steering assistance, which cannot meet all road conditions and cannot fully achieve autonomous driving. You always have a responsibility to drive your vehicle safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- HWA can only be used on enclosed roads such as highways or elevated roads. However, you should always concentrate on driving and override the vehicle guickly in case of an emergency.

- You must override the vehicle immediately when HWA fails to maintain a proper speed or distance from the vehicle ahead.
- Loading too many items in the boot may cause a change in vehicle attitude, which may degrade or disable the performance of HWA.
- When another vehicle changes lanes to the front of your car, HWA may not have time to respond. At this point, you shall apply brake in time.
- HWA is not a collision avoidance system, and it is your responsibility to apply braking in an emergency.
- When driving downhill on steep slopes, it may be difficult for HWA to maintain proper distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, be extra careful and always be ready to apply braking.
- HWA may not respond to animals, small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles, or stationary vehicles.
- When the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at low speed, HWA can control the steering torque according to the trajectory of the vehicle ahead, in this way your vehicle can move laterally slowly as the vehicle ahead does. At this time, the driver is required to pay special attention to the traffic situation on both sides of the vehicle.
- HWA may not respond to vehicles or objects crossing the lane where your vehicle is running in. You need to be attentive at

- all times, take braking measures and override the vehicle if necessary.
- When the HWA is working, if you depress the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be overridden by you, responding to your acceleration need. The control by the HWA system will not be functioning.
- The selection of a target may be delayed or interfered with when driving into and out of curves. HWA may brake unexpectedly or brake too late.
- If you are driving on serpentine roads or sharp turns, you should always be prepared to take over the steering wheel control direction. Due to the limited field of view of the medium range radar, HWA cannot detect the vehicle in front normally, which may cause the vehicle to accelerate. Therefore, do not use HWA in these situations.
- HWA may recognize road edges (walls, guardrails, curbs, grass, anti-skid paved strips, and asphalt joints) as lane lines during its operation, so you need to be alert to it.
- When the HWA function is activated, you should always be ready to take over the steering wheel, especially in corners. When traveling through winding, sharp turns, you should immediately take over the steering wheel control of the vehicle, do not use the HWA in this situation.

 HWA is an improvement of ACC, and ACC related precautions also apply to HWA.

① Note!

When the HWA fails, the icon los is shown in grey to remind the driver to take over the control of the vehicle.



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- 3. Vehicle ahead
- 4. Following distance

Status display for HWA



When HWA is not activated, no targeted car ahead is detected



When HWA is activated, no targeted car ahead is detected.



When HWA is not activated, a targeted car appears ahead.



The subject vehicle is very close to the target vehicle in front. The safety distance is not respected.



HWA is active and a target is selected within a safe distance

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking measures in a timely manner if necessary.

Activating HWA



Left multi-function button

- Press and release the left multi-function button rightward to switch to the HWA function, at this time the icon is displayed in white, and the HWA enters ready mode.
- 2. Press the left multi-function button to activate the HWA function, at this time the icon @ is displayed in blue.

When the high and fast road assist function is switched on, only the adaptive cruise capability can be switched on, with no steering assist, if the following conditions occur, All Icon steering wheel in blue, lane lines in white:

■ The turn signals are illuminated.

- Vehicle on the line, vehicle not in the lane or body at too great an angle to the centre line of the lane.
- The steering wheel steers to a certain strength.
- Driveways are too narrow or too wide.
- Lane lines are not recognised for long periods of time.

Lane change assist



You can click on the @ icon on the CSD screen and select **Safety** to manually turn on or off the **Lane Change Assist** switch.

After the auxiliary switch for lane change is activated, the HWA can control the vehicle to automatically change lanes according to the direction of the turn signal by turning the vehicle's turn signal on.

⚠ Warning!

- This function is only for auxiliary driving, and you should always observe the surrounding environment of the vehicle before operation. You are always responsible for driving the vehicle safely and complying with current laws and traffic regulations.
- During the lane change process, you should always hold the steering wheel, pay attention to the road conditions, and focus on driving.
- Affected by the environment, if a vehicle automatically changes lanes on a solid line, you should take over the vehicle in a timely manner to avoid illegal or irregular operations.

① Note!

The following operating requirements needs to be fulfilled to ensure the function work properly:

- Driving on a road without pedestrians or cyclists and with physical barriers separating oncoming vehicles.
- Minimum speed 65 km/h; Maximum speed 150 km/h.
- Lane markings detected.

The lane change maneuver will not start when the function detected hands off or the target lane is blocked by other traffic. The lane change maneuver can be cancelled and the vehicle will come back to the original lane by the driver input or driving situations (defined by EU regulation):

- Driver override the steering control.
- Driver switch off the turn indicator or operate the turn signal in the opposite direction before the vehicle enter the target lane.
- Hands off is detected during the lane change process.
- There is a critical approaching vehicle in target lane.
- The vehicle is not able to enter the target lane after turn indicator is switched on for 5s.

Adjusting HWA

To set target vehicle speed and following distance for HWA, please refer to **Adjust ACC** (p.219).

Avoid overtaking on the right



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the avoid overtaking on the right.

When driving on a highway with HWA function activated, if the adjacent lane of your vehicle is a designated fast lane, your vehicle will be prohibited from overtaking the target vehicle with a speed greater than 85km/h in front of the adjacent fast lane.

Build emergency lane



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the build emergency lane.

When build emergency lane function is switched on and there is a traffic jam on the current highway road, the HWA will start to build up space for the emergency vehicle by moving to the left or right in the current lane.

You can switch the build emergency lane function to ${f OFF}$, ${f ON}$ or ${f AUTOMATICALLY}$:

OFF: HWA will not build an emergency lane.

ON: HWA will always build an emergency lane when the operating conditions are fulfilled.

AUTOMATICALLY: HWA will automatically build an emergency lane when the operating conditions are fulfilled based on the country currently travelling in (Germany, Belgium, Croatia, Austria, Switzerland, Slovakia, Slovenia, Poland, Hungary).

Adjust speed to route



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the adjust speed to route.

Under HWA function activation, the function will adjust the vehicle speed based on the upcoming road type and information, such as automatically slowing down when the vehicle approaches a roundabout.

Automatic speed adjustment



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter the driving assist setting interface, turn on or off the automatic speed adjustment.

After enabling automatic speed limit fusion, under the condition of HWA function activation:

When a new speed limit is recognized, it will be displayed on the left side of CSD. The speed limit will be automatically synchronized as the HWA target speed.

Disable HWA



Left multi-function button

By pressing the left multi-function button or depressing the brake pedal, HWA will be temporarily deactivated, at this time the left icon turns white, and HWA enters ready mode.

If the following situations occur, HWA will temporarily disable the steering assist with an acoustic warning and only maintain the ACC:

- You take over the steering wheel and turn to a certain force.
- Drive across the line to a certain width and for a certain duration.
- Lane change assist switch is off and the turn signal is on.
- The lane is too narrow or the lane line cannot be recognized for a long time.

If the following situations occur, HWA will automatically exit:

- The wipers are at the highest level.
- Any one of the doors, bonnet and tailgate is opened.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened.
- The wheels lose grip.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).
- The FPR is activated
- The accelerator pedal is depressed to accelerate for more than 3 min or the speed exceeds 155 km/h.
- The ESC is deactivated or malfunctioning.
- The gear lever is disengaged from drive (D) gear.
- The front windscreen or the front radar area is covered by dust, rain, frost, snow or other dirt.
- The driving mode is switched to off-road mode or track mode.
- The HDC is activated.
- The trailer mode is activated.
- Triggering of the AEB.
- Triggering of the ABS.

The function cannot be activated when any of the above conditions are not met, and there is a prompt at this time.

⚠ Warning!

After HWA is deactivated, you must take over control of your car to ensure the driving safety.

Recovering HWA



Left multi-function button

When the HWA enters ready mode, scroll up the left multi-function button, then HWA will be reactivated, and the left multi-function button, then HWA will be reactivated.

Limitations of HWA

HWA may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Roads with invisible lane lines.
- Roads with forks
- Roads with vehicle imprints, such as tyre tracks.
- Roads with a large deviation between the original lane and the new lane.
- Roads with potholes, bumps, undulating pavement.
- Roads under construction.
- Roads that are too wide or too narrow.
- Roads where the lane lines are not straight.
- Roads with too small curves (such as ramps, hilly loop, etc.).
- Crossroads or fork in the road.
- Roads with damaged or unclear lane lines.
- The driver actively controls the vehicle.

Forward drive assist

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)

The autonomous emergency braking (AEB) alerts driver to pedestrians, cyclists, and vehicles through audible and visible alarms. When the driver fails to react to the warning signal from the forward collision warning and the situation continues to deteriorate, or when the driver presses the brake pedal but the braking force is insufficient, the AEB will intervene in time to apply limited braking

to the vehicle, reducing the speed of the vehicle by a maximum of 60 km/h in order to mitigate the consequences of the accident.

The following conditions must be met for AEB to function:

- The driver fastens the seat belt and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.
- AEB is enabled.
- The wipers are not at the highest level.

① Note!

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

AEB includes four systems to help avoid a forward collision. The four systems are described below and are: safety distance alarm, forward collision warning (FCW), dynamic bake support (DBS), and automatic emergency braking (AEB).

- Safety distance warning: the safety distance warning works in a non-emergency state. When the vehicle speed reaches 65 km/h and above, the safety distance warning is used to prompt you that the following distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, and the driving behaviour should be adjusted to maintain a reasonable distance.
- FCW: if the system determines that there is a potential risk of collision with the vehicle running at 4~150 km/h, it will alert you

- of the potential collision risk through the warning sound and the warning symbols on instrument cluster.
- DBS: when the vehicle is running at 4~90km/h and above, if there is a danger but the current braking force applied by you is too small, the system will assist you to increase the braking force to avoid or mitigate collisions.
- AEB: when the vehicle is running at 4~80 km/h, if there is a danger but you does not apply effective braking, the system will intervene in time to apply AEB to avoid or mitigate collisions. If the car is provided with seat belt pretensioner, the seat belt will be pre-tensioned to protect the driver.

⚠ Warning!

- These four systems provide an extra measure of safety, but they are installed only to assist the driver. These four systems should not be solely relied upon or over-relied upon as they may not operate correctly under all driving, weather, traffic, or road conditions (for example, they may not recognize a large truck in front of you). These systems are not a substitute for the driver maintaining complete control of the vehicle at all times, watching the road with hands on the steering wheel ready to take action and brake, closely paying attention to the task of driving, and driving in a careful and responsible manner.
- No driving assist system can function 100% under all circumstances. Therefore, you should never drive the vehicle

- towards pedestrians or objects for the purpose of testing the performance of AEB.
- AEB is a driver assistance system. You should always maintain an appropriate speed and distance from the vehicle ahead, and not wait for the issuance of FCW signals or for intervention of AEB.
- AEB cannot be used properly in all driving, traffic, weather or road conditions.
- For effective targets identified by the system, depending on the vehicle, the scenario and the road conditions, AEB cannot always assist you to avoid or mitigate collisions.
- This function will not be activated at a lower vehicle speed. Similarly, this system will not apply a brake when the subject vehicle is approaching the vehicle or pedestrian ahead at a lower speed.
- AEB does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.
- Even if HWA or ACC is activated, the driver always has the responsibility to keep an eye on the real-time traffic conditions.
 AEB cannot ensure the avoidance or mitigation of a collision in real time.
- When the current maximum braking force is applied through AEB, the vehicle speed can be reduced by 60 km/h to avoid or mitigate a collision. For example, when the AEB braking

- is triggered at a speed of 80 km/h, the braking force cannot continue to decelerate after it drops to a maximum of 20 km/h.
- When using the parking function, the low-speed AEB function will be suppressed.

Detect objects



- Vehicle ahead
- 2. Textual alarm signal

Status display for object detection



When the subject vehicle is too close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns yellow.



When subject vehicle is very close to the front vehicle, the front vehicle turns red.

① Note!

If ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only indicates its colour in the middle of the upper edge.

The FCW warns you with audible and visual signals when the subject vehicle is about to collide with another vehicle or pedestrian ahead.

Status display for FCW



A car is detected in front.



A pedestrian is detected in front.



A cyclist is detected in front.

⚠ Warning!

You must maintain an appropriate speed and a safe distance, and take braking measures in time if necessary.

Setting AEB



AEB switch

You can click the s icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter AEB settings interface, where you can turn on or off the AEB.

When the AEB fails, the *= indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow, the AEB switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated; when the AEB is turned off, the *= indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow.

The AEB will begin with a self-check when the vehicle is started, and during self-check, AEB will not work.

Limitations of AEB

AEB may not work well in the following situations, and it is recommended that you do not over-rely on it:

- Driving on slippery roads: the braking distance of the vehicle will be extended on slippery roads.
- Strong exterior lighting: strong sunlight, reflections and extreme light contrast may make it difficult for the driver to see the image alarm, and they may also affect the detection function of the front-view camera.
- Over-temperature in car: if the interior temperature is too high, the front-view camera may be temporarily disabled and the system may not issue an alarm.
- Reduced visibility in severe weather: heavy snow, blowing snow, rain, dense fog and dusty weather all have an impact on the windscreen and front bumper and may degrade system functions.
- Limited front-view camera/radar visibility: in some cases, the system may detect vehicles or pedestrians later than expected or fail to detect any person or object.

- Driver having strong initiative: if the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the vehicle, the system may not react or react later than expected.
- The road surface is uneven.
- There are metal interfering objects on the side of the road or on the roadside.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

⚠ Warning!

- Before driving, the driver should learn the limitations of AEB.
- The driver should keep applying braking force in the event of a danger even AEB is in operation.
- When the driver actively manoeuvres/brakes the car, the system may not react or react later than expected.

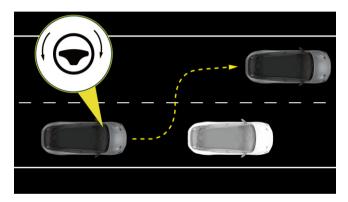
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*

When the system detects that the driver operates the steering wheel to avoid an imminent collision but the steering force is insufficient, the evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will assist in avoidance by increasing the steering force.

If the driver intends to operate the steering wheel to return the car to its original lane after the obstacle is bypassed by increasing the steering force, evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will also assist in the returning.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) will work only when the vehicle is running at a speed of $50\sim120$ km/h.

Interrupting evasive maneuver assist (EMA)



When evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is working to assist in obstacle avoidance, the driver can interrupt its operation by switching on the direction indicator lamps and depressing the accelerator pedal hard or turning the steering wheel reversely.

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) does not work when any of the following systems is activated:

■ Highway assist (HWA)*(p.227).

- Lane keep assist(LKA)(p.243).
- The vehicle is in towing mode.

Limitations of evasive maneuver assist (EMA)

Objects that evasive maneuver assist (EMA) can detect include pedestrians, two-wheelers, vehicles (coaches, trucks, passenger cars).

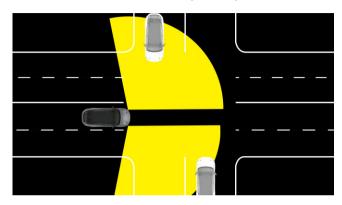
Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) may not work properly when any of the following conditions or road environments occur:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to driver's operation.
- Slippery roads with water, snow or ice.
- Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) failure.

⚠ Warning!

Evasive maneuver assist (EMA) is only a driver assist system and cannot handle all emergency situations. The driver is required to pay attention, maintain a safe distance from other vehicles, comply with current laws and traffic regulations, and drive the car safely.

Front cross traffic alert (FCTA)



When you are driving out of the parking space or passing an intersection, if front cross traffic alert detects that there is a risk of side collision in the front, it will remind the driver to pay attention to the side oncoming vehicles.



- 1. Visual warning signal
- 2. Text warning signal

① Note!

If ACC or HWA is not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the upper edge.

When the system detects that there is a risk of colliding with crossing cars at front, it will alert the driver to note crossing cars ahead through audible and visual signals.

All of the following conditions must be met for front cross traffic alert to function:

■ The speed of the target vehicle is 0~60 km/h.

- The speed of the Self-vehicle is 4~60 km/h.
- The driver fastens the seat belt.
- The car is moving forward.

Due to the interference caused by external factors to the system, the system will inevitably have some false alarms.

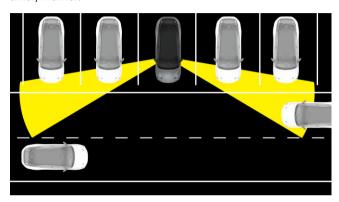
When the front cross traffic alert fails, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow, the front cross traffic alert switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated; when the front cross traffic alert is turned off, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow.

① Note!

- When you are turning at a right angle or running through a T-intersection, the FCTA may issue an alarm if the turning speed of the target car is 4~60 km/h.
- FCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to roadblocks (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

Limitations of front cross traffic alert

When the vehicle exits the parking space, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding vehicles and obstacles. In this case, front cross traffic alert may not detect the front crossing vehicles in a timely manner.



Front cross traffic alert will not work properly under any of the following conditions:

- Uneven road.
- Metal interference on the road or in the road.
- System misjudgement due to improper operation.
- Road with low adhesion due to water, snow or ice.
- There is a system fault (such as camera, radar, brake, steering, etc.).

Lane keep assist (LKA)

LKA attempts to keep the vehicle in its own lane when the vehicle running on highway or main road is about to deviate from its own lane due to driver distraction or other circumstances.

The LKA consists of lane departure warning (LDW), lane departure prevention (LDP) and emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA).



When LKA works, the driver is required to hold the steering wheel with both hands at all times. When the LKA is activated for the first time and the system detects that the driver is not holding the steering wheel, no prompt message will appear on the instrument cluster. If the LKA is activated again in the next period of time, and the system detects that the driver is still not holding the steering

wheel, it will prompt "Keep hands on wheel" on the instrument cluster. At the same time, the takeover prompt tone is issued.

When the vehicle deviates from its own lane again, LKA will be enabled again.

LKA can identify lane lines, pedestrians, curbs, and oncoming traffic ahead/behind and calculate the distance of the subject vehicle to the left and right lane lines and the oncoming traffic ahead/behind when the car is running at 60~180km/h. When the car deviates from its lane or is leaving the lane, the system will alert the driver to keep the car in the lane by making a sound.

When the car deviates from the lane or is about to collide with a pedestrian or vehicle in the adjacent lane, the system will provide steering force to bring the car back into its own lane.

⚠ Warning!

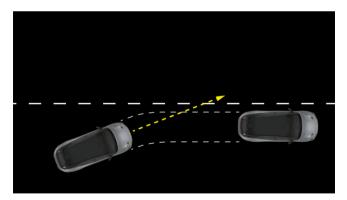
- LKA is only to assist you and it may not function properly in all driving, weather, traffic or road conditions.
- Do not use this function on urban streets, construction areas, narrow roads, or areas where cyclists or pedestrians may be present.
- LKA cannot guarantee collision avoidance. It is always your responsibility to drive the vehicle safely.

Please hold the steering wheel correctly to avoid triggering the release alarm by mistake.

Lane departure warning

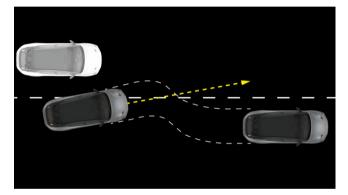
If you do not actively control the steering of the vehicle and the system detects that the vehicle is about to or has deviated from its own lane, a lane departure warning will remind you by generating a sound.

Lane departure prevention



If the driver does not actively control the steering of the car and the system detects that the car is approaching a lane line and there is a risk of deviation, the system will provide steering force to the steering wheel to bring the car back into its own lane. When the car continues to deviate from its own lane, the Lane departure warning system, if activated, will issue an alarm to alert the driver.

Emergency lane keeping assist



Emergency lane keeping assist will actively control the steering system to help the vehicle return to its current lane if the system detects that the vehicle is deviating from its own lane and the following conditions are imminent:

- The car is about to rush off the road or collide with the curb.
- Collision with an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle behind due to an unintentional departure from the lane.

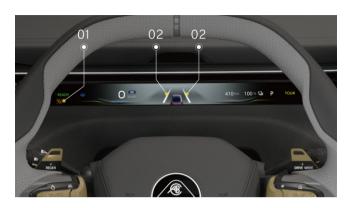
 Collision with a pedestrian in the adjacent lane due to an unintentional departure from the lane.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention and judgement at all times, ensurethat the vehicle is in its own lane, and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

① Note!

- Lane keeping assist may not work when you are driving on sharp bends or narrow roads.
- During normal driving, the lane keeping assist will not intervene
 or give a warning if the direction indicator lamps are switched
 on or the brake pedal is depressed.
- Lane keeping assist may be limited or unavailable when the electronic stability control(ESC) is malfunctioning, deactivated or intervening.



- 1. Lane keeping assist status indicator
- 2. Lane lines



No lane line is displayed if it is not detected by lane keeping assist.



When lane departure warning is active, the lane lines are displayed in red.



When lane keeping assist is active, the lane lines are displayed in blue.

Setting lane keeping assist



Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Safety** to enter lane keeping assist setting interface where the lane keep assist can be set.

You can also click on the 🗓 icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

When the lane keeping assist fails, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow, the lane keeping assist switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated; when the LKA is turned off, the indicator on the instrument cluster is illuminated in yellow.

Limitations of lane keeping assist

It is recommended that you do not rely too heavily on lane keeping assist as it may not work properly in the following situations:

- The lane lines are not clear.
- The speed of the car is not within the working range.
- The driver actively steers.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA)

The automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA) obtains road traffic sign information such as speed limit signs through the front camera, map and navigation information, and prompts you of the current road sign information through the instrument cluster in real time. If the vehicle is driving at a speed above the speed limit of the current road, the system will give warning in time, so as to assist you in driving properly.

Automatic speed limit alarm is used to alert you to current speed limits on the road, and helps you to keep driving at the legally prescribed speed and comply with local traffic restrictions.

⚠ Warning!

 Drivers must always keep their attention and judgment, actively control the speed and drive safely, and abide by traffic rules.

- Any automatic speed limit alarm system indications and warnings are without prejudice to the actual speed limit applicable in a particular situation, the observation of which and compliance with remain ultimate responsibility of the driver.
- If the speed limit sign is not clear or is twisted, inclined, irregular, partially occluded or covered, etc., the identification ability of the front camera will be impaired, resulting in misidentification or failure to identify.

- Generally, maps are automatically updated monthly via OTA updates.
- Maps are free to use for seven years, and the system works for 14 years.

① Note!

Automatic speed limit alarm can only identify traffic speed limit signs, and it is invalid for other traffic signs.

After automatic speed limit alarm recognizes the speed limit sign on the road, it will be displayed on the instrument cluster in the form of an icon.



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Speed limit sign on current road

When the automatic speed limit alarm fails, the automatic speed limit alarm switch on the central display is gray and cannot be operated.

① Note!

- Road sign information may not be displayed or be displayed inaccurately when the map data is incorrect, not updated, or inaccurately positioned.
- For other signs that are not standardized or not positioned as required, they may be recognized as speed limit signs/road signs, resulting in misidentification.

The features of speed limit alarm/road sign recognition are affected by factors such as the field of view of the front camera, the relative position of the front camera and the speed limit/ road sign, etc., therefore the speed limit/road sign may be incorrectly identified or not identified.

Speed limit information identification



The alarm will be triggered when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system; The alarm will be released when the vehicle speed is below the speed limit recognized by the system until a new speed limit is detected.

⚠ Warning!

The speed limit alarm only has the function to remind the speed limit. The driver must actively control the speed and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.

① Note!

- The speed limit sign of the current road is recognized, and the speed limit value is displayed; in case of recognition failure, "---" will be displayed.
- Automatic speed limit alarm can automatically position the vehicle and automatically detect the country where the vehicle is located, but the driver still needs to actively set the speed UNIT (KILOMETERS and MILES)(p.305) according to the road speed limit sign in different countries, otherwise the speed limit alarm may not work normally.

Setting speed limit alarm



- 1. Automatic speed limit alarm
- 2. Setted speed limit alarm
- 3. Automatic speed adjustment

You can click the @ icon on CSD as needed, and select **Safety** to enter the automatic speed limit alarm setting interface where you can set the speed limit alarm mode.

You can also click on the 🗓 icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

You can also manually click to open the setted speed limit alarm, drag the slider to any position of the setted speed limit alarm slider to set the speed limit.

Automatic speed limit assist for cruising



- 1. Current speed
- 2. Target speed
- 3. Speed limit sign on current road

With the ACC/HWA and fusion with speed-limit enabled simultaneously, if the speed limit sign on the current road is detected, and the target speed currently set by ACC/HWA is higher than the speed limit, the system will automatically adjust the target speed to the speed limit value; if the target speed is lower than the speed limit, no change will be made.

Limitations of Automatic speed limit alarm

Automatic speed limit alarm may fail to identify or inaccurately identify road signs in the following conditions:

- Irregular road sign.
- Faded logo.
- Sign on a curve.
- Rotated or damaged sign.
- Signs erected high above the highway.
- Signs that are completely/partially obscured or in a relatively obscure position.
- Signs that are fully or partially covered by frost, snow and/or dust.

Rear drive assist

Rear collision warning (RCW)

If the rear collision warning (RCW) detects a risk of rear-end collision when the car is driving at a speed within $0\sim150$ km/h, it will alert the driver through audible and visual signals, and trigger the hazard warning lights to turn on, alerting the driver of the vehicle behind to brake.

① Note!

The vehicle is at rest (non-trailer state) after starting. When the gear lever is in non-R gear and there is a rear collision risk and the collision cannot be avoided, when the vehicle is stationary, the system will request the vehicle to apply brake automatically

- to reduce the risk of the car slipping forward after being rearended and to avoid a secondary collision between the subject vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- When the turn signal, hazard warning light, and emergency brake light are turned on, rear collision warning (RCW) will not be triggered to activate the hazard warning light.



Visual alarm signal



When the following car is close to your car, the rear of your car turns yellow.



When the following car is very close to your car, the rear of your car turns red.

① Note!

If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only indicates the corresponding colour in the middle of the lower edge.

If the RCW works in non-R gears and the vehicle does not slip backwards, then the following targets approaching from the rear can be detected:

- Bicycles.
- Motor vehicles.
- Electro-mobiles or motorcycle.

RCW may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- In towing mode.
- The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
- ESC is deactivated.
- Any of the vehicle doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) is not closed.

Setting RCW



You can tap the @ icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the RCW setting interface, where the RCW function can be activated or deactivated.

① Note!

When the RCW is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the $\frac{6}{14}$ indicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of RCW

It is recommended that you should not rely too much on RCW, as it may not detect a target or work well in the following cases:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The target vehicle approaches after changing lanes from another one
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Blind spot detection (BSD)

The blind spot detection (BSD) covers blind spot areas as well as the area of rapid arrivals on the side and rear, helping the driver to be more alert to blind spots and vehicles coming from behind, especially when turning or changing lanes.



Visual alarm signal

① Note!

If ACC and HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model.

BSD works when the car is driving at a speed within $15\sim150$ km/h.

When BSD is working, the BSD indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and a visual alarm signal will pop up on the instrument cluster.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

⚠ Warning!

Do not rely too much on BSD. To ensure the safety of lane change, you shall be vigilant and need to make good observations and judgements of the surroundings before changing lanes.

BSD may not work when the vehicle is under any of the following conditions:

- In reverse (R) gear.
- The vehicle is in towing mode or not driving.

Setting BSD



BSD warning mode

Click the icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the lane change safety and warning setting interface, where the BSD warning method can be selected.

① Note!

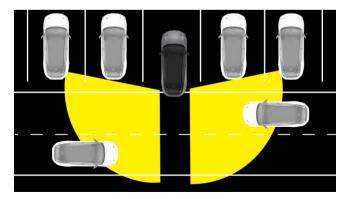
When the BSD is malfunctioning or does not work properly, the $\frac{64}{14}$ indicator will be illuminated.

Limitations of BSD

In any of the following cases, the BSD may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the BSD:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- The driver changes lanes without switching on the direction indicator lamp.
- The target is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- The car is making a sharp turn or in an open area.
- The target vehicle is approaching very quickly or very slowly.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)



If there is a risk of a lateral collision at the time when the driver reverses from the parking space or garage, RCTA will alert the driver to notice the rear side of the vehicle and brake if necessary to avoid or mitigate a collision.



Visual alarm signal

① Note!

- If the ACC or HWA are not enabled, the instrument cluster will not display the vehicle model but only a visual alarm on the left or right side of the lower edge.
- RCTA does not respond to the following objects: including but not limited to road obstacles (e.g., road cones, water-filled barriers), walls, traffic lights.

In addition to visual alarms on instrument cluster, the following alarm forms will also be presented to remind the driver of car coming from behind when the system detects that there is a risk of rear lateral collision:

- The BSD indicator on outside mirror is illuminated.
- A hazard warning is shown on CSD.

If your vehicle is equipped with a streaming mirror, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm while BSD is working.

The following conditions must be met for RCTA to function:

- The gear is shifted to N or R and the car speed is below 18 km/h.
- The target car is running at 0~97 km/h relative to your car.
- The driver fastens the seat belt and the four doors (including the bonnet and the tailgate) are closed.
- ESC is enabled.
- The vehicle is not in towing mode.
- RCTA is enabled.

⚠ Warning!

To ensure safe reversing, you have to look around and make sure your surroundings are safe before reversing.

Setting RCTA

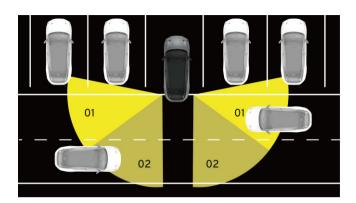


RCTA setting interface

Click the icon in Vehicle Settings interface, and select **Safety** to enter RCTA setting interface, where you can turn on or off the RCTA.

Limitations of RCTA

When the car reverses from the parking space or the garage, radars on both sides may be blocked by surrounding cars and obstacles. In this case, RCTA may fail to detect the rear crossing cars in a timely manner.



- . Blind spot
- 2. Detected area

In any of the following cases, the RCTA may not detect the target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on the RCTA:

- Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Door opening warning (DOW)

When the car is stationary or driving at a low speed, the DOW system detects the moving targets approaching from behind and the sides. When there is a potential risk of collision at the time

of door opening, the BSD indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, to remind the driver and passengers that opening door may result in a risk of collision.

When the system predicts that there is a risk of collision at the time of opening the door, it will hinder the driver and passengers from using the door switch to open the doors, but the emergency handle can be used normally to open the door.

① Note!

If the door cannot be opened normally due to the system, you can use the emergency handle to open the door.

DOW sign



If DOW detects a target and there is a risk of collision when the door is being opened, the indicator on the outside mirror will be illuminated or flash, accompanied by an audible alarm, and images and text alarm signals will pop up on the instrument cluster.

If your vehicle is equipped with streaming mirrors, the blind spot monitoring indicator lights up or flashes on the streaming mirror display with an audible alarm.

① Note!

DOW starts to work after the vehicle is powered on; if DOW fails, the hindicator will be illuminated and relevant text prompts will be shown on the instrument cluster. In this case, please contact Lotus retailer in time.

Setting DOW



DOW setting interface

You can click the @ icon in the CSD, and select **Safety** to enter the DOW setting interface, where the DOW function can be activated or deactivated.

Limitations of DOW

DOW does not work when the vehicle is in towing mode.

In the following cases, the DOW may not detect a target or work well, and it is recommended that you do not rely too much on DOW:

 Adverse weather such as snow, fog, etc. that affects the system and prevents the target from being detected.

- Targets approaching from the side and rear of the car are moving too fast.
- The target is small or moving slowly or stationary.
- On sharp turns, downhill roads, quite narrow or wide lanes.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).

Brake assist system

Comfortable brake stop (CST)

Comfortable brake stop (CST) can provide a more comfortable braking experience when decelerating and stopping in non-emergency situations. During the process of lightly pressing the brake pedal, CST can reduce the forward tilt of the vehicle, making it smoother when decelerating and stopping.

- When the vehicle driving mode is in range mode, tour mode, or individual mode, the comfortable brake stop function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle driving mode is in sport mode, track mode, or off-road mode, the comfortable brake stop function is turned off by default.

! Caution!

The comfortable brake stop function will slightly increase the braking distance, please reserve enough braking space in advance.

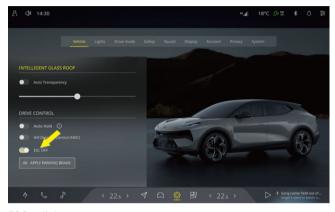
Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control (ESC) can improve driving stability and safety by intervening the driving torque output or applying braking force to wheel ends when the vehicle is unstable.

⚠ Warning!

- ESC is an auxiliary system, which cannot handle all situations or road conditions. It is always the driver's responsibility to drive the car safely and comply with current laws and traffic regulations.
- Do not modify the suspensions of the vehicle. Otherwise, the ESC cannot function properly, and the manoeuvrability of the vehicle may be adversely affected.

Setting ESC



ESC switch

You can click the @ icon in the CSD and select **Vehicle** to enter the ESC setting interface, where you can click to turn ESC on or off.

⚠ Warning!

The stability control applied to the car will be reduced when ESC is deactivated.

① Note!

If the car gets stuck in snow, sand or other conditions, deactivating ESC can help the car get grip and traction. At this time, the indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS can prevent the wheels from locking up when the driver is applying the maximum braking force. It improves the car's steering control in emergency braking situations under most road conditions.

⚠ Warning!

- On rough, gravel or snow-covered roads, the braking distance may be longer than on normal roads.
- ABS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

① Note!

When triggering the ABS function during braking, the driver will feel a continuous "clucking" sound coming from the bonnet. This is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of ABS, not a malfunction. In special working conditions (such as high-speed turns, sharp turns, etc.), you will feel a continuous "clucking" sound coming from the cabin, which is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of vehicle stability related functions, rather than a malfunction.

Electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD)

Electronic brake-force distribution (EBD) ensures good braking performance and stability of the vehicle under different load conditions by regulating the distribution of braking forces between front and rear wheels and controlling the slip of rear wheels.

Corner traction control (CTC)

Corner traction control (CTC) assists in controlling the vehicle to pass through a curve at high speed. When the inside wheels have a tendency to slip, CTC will apply the braking force to them, and increase the torque applied to the outside wheels through the differential, so as to improve the curve passing ability of the vehicle.

① Note!

When turning the vehicle under special working conditions, there may be a sound, which is a normal phenomenon.

Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system (TCS) can intervene in the output torque of vehicle according to the degree of wheel slip, and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle to achieve a smooth start and improve the vehicle's driving ability and stability.

① Note!

TCS is a function that is enabled by default in ESC, and it will be activated when the car is accelerating and starting on a road with low adhesion or on a split road.

When the car is starting on a completely wet and slippery road, the indicator on the instrument cluster will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS can reduce the torque output of the powertrain to reduce slip and allow the car to be started quickly.

When the car is starting on a split road with one side slippery, the indicator $\stackrel{\frown}{\sim}$ on the instrument cluster will flash if any of the wheels slips. TCS improves the car's drive ability and stability by applying braking force to tyres on the side with low adhesion.

If continuous operation of TCS leads to over-temperature of the brake discs, the TCS will be deactivated, and display corresponding text on the instrument cluster to remind you that the brake disc temperature is too high.

⚠ Warning!

- The driver should maintain attention and judgement at all times to ensure the driving safety and override the car when necessary.
- TCS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Hill descent control (HDC)

HDC controls the speed of the car through automatic braking intervention. When driving downhill, the driver does not need to continuously depress the brake pedal to control the speed of the car. The current speed of the car can be maintained automatically, so the driver can focus more on controlling the steering wheel. HDC mainly works when the car is running downhill on rough or slippery long steep slopes.

The driver can still step on the accelerator pedal to increase speed temporarily, or step on the brake pedal to slow down or stop the car at any time.

⚠ Warning!

If the HDC is working continuously while the car is running downhill on a long slope, the temperature of the brake discs may be too high, in which case, the HDC will be deactivated temporarily, and the indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated to remind the driver to take over the vehicle.

If the HDC is activated during downhill driving, the 2 indicator on the instrument cluster will be illuminated, and the speed can maintain at a speed of $4{\sim}35$ km/h. When the speed is less than 4 km/h, the speed is maintained at 4 km/h after the brake pedal is released; at a speed of 35 to 40 km/h, the speed is maintained at 35 km/h when the brake pedal is released.

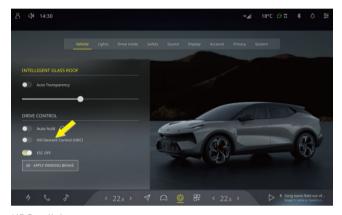
① Note!

- After HDC is turned on, HDC is only activated when the vehicle is running downhill at low speed on a steep slope.
- At speeds above 60 km/h, HDC is deactivated and disabled automatically.
- When HDC is deactivated, the braking force gradually decreases until it disappears.

⚠ Warning!

 The driver should maintain attention and judgement at all times to ensure the driving safety and take over the car when necessary. HDC is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Setting HDC



HDC switch

Click the @ icon on CSD and select **Vehicle** to enter the HDC setting interface.

Enable HDC, and the sicon on the instrument cluster will be shown in grey, indicating that the vehicle enters ready mode.

Brake assist system (BAS)

The brake assist system (BAS) detects the speed at which you depress the brake pedal to determine whether it is an emergency braking situation. When you do not apply enough force to the brake pedal or the pedal travel is insufficient to provide sufficient braking force, the system may increase the brake pressure automatically.

① Note!

- The BAS will not work when the ESC fault indicator → remains on, in such a case please contact the Lotus retailer in time.
- BAS is a supplementary system, not capable of managing every circumstance or road condition. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and adhering to all traffic laws and regulations.

Anti roll-over program (ARP)

The anti roll-over protection (ARP) is an active safety system that keeps the vehicle stable by detecting its driving condition and applying braking force to the outside wheels before the vehicle loses stability.

⚠ Warning!

You should maintain attention at all times while driving to ensure the driving safety and override the vehicle when necessary.

① Note!

ARP is enabled by default in ESC to prevent the vehicle from rolling over due to your sharp turning of steering wheel When the ARP function is activated, the ESC MIL $\stackrel{\frown}{\wp}$ on the instrument cluster will flash.

Hill start assist (HSA)

The hill start assist (HSA) helps you prevent the vehicle from moving downhill when starting on a slope. HSA will keep the vehicle stationary on a slope for a short time (approximately 2s) after the brake pedal is released.

HSA is operational when the gear lever is set to drive (D) or reverse (R) position and the EPB is deactivated.

⚠ Warning!

HSA is not a substitute for the electronic parking brake (EPB).
 The driver should shift gear to Park (P) and enable the EPB when leaving the vehicle.

- If the vehicle starts to slip backwards, the brake pedal should be depressed immediately. HSA may not be able to prevent the vehicle from sliding down a steep ramp under all load conditions or all road conditions.
- When starting on a ramp, it is forbidden to press the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal simultaneously.

Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC)

The Lotus intelligent dynamic control (LIDC) integrates the control information you provide to the vehicle while driving, detects the overall condition of the vehicle based on sensors, and comprehensively schedules various vehicle systems to enhance the manoeuvrability, stability and comfort of the vehicle.

① Note!

If your vehicle is equipped with active rear steering, LIDC can improve the steering agility and driving agility and reduce the turning radius of the vehicle in the following scenarios:

- When driving at medium or low speeds.
- When the vehicle is reversing at low speeds.

When the vehicle is running at high speed, the LIDC can keep the vehicle moving stably before the ESC is activated. In this process, the control is smooth, thereby improving driving comfort.

Lotus intelligent anti-roll control system*

The lotus intelligent anti-roll control system monitors the movement of the vehicle in real time through the sensors arranged on the chassis and the body. The electronic active stabilizer bar provides greater roll support in the curve, reduces the roll angle of the body, and improves the grip of the vehicle in the curve. When a single wheel drives over a pit or a road, it can reduce the mutual influence when the left and right wheels jump up and down, reduce the impact of the road impact on the body, and improve the comfort.

When a fault alarm related to the lotus intelligent anti-roll control system is displayed on the instrument cluster, you are not allowed to drive on rough roads and turn at low speed. In this case, contact the Lotus retailer in time to eliminate the fault.

⚠ Warning!

- It is prohibited to remove and install relevant components of the suspension controller without permission.
- Do not place any magnetic objects near the electric active antiroll bar system to prevent damage to it.

Electrical pad wear indication (EPWI)

The EPWI is used to detect the wear condition of the friction pads. When the friction pads are worn to the limit or the sensor is short-circuited, there will be a text prompt displayed on the instrument cluster and the fault lamp will be illuminated, accompanied by an audible alarm

The tyres must be removed periodically for a visual inspection of the brakes. For detailed specifications and usage restrictions on brake discs and pads, please refer to **Braking parameters** (p.399).

Caution!

Failure to replace worn brake pads can damage the braking system and result in brake failure.

Alarm status	Fault lamp
The front friction pads are worn to the limit	
The rear friction linings are worn to the limit	
The front friction pad alarm is short circuited	
The rear friction pad alarm is short circuited	

The text prompt and fault light alarm will remain until the fault is removed. The audible alarm will stop when a malfunction occurs or when the power is turned on and the alarm is triggered several times

The EPWI does not work when the vehicle is in the following conditions:

- The vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h.
- FPR is activated
- Any braking behaviour.

⚠ Warning!

- The warning appears or disappears within a period after the fault is occurred or removed.
- When an warning occurs, the driver must decelerate and stop the car safely as soon as possible, and confirm that the fault has been removed before continuing to drive the car.
- If the friction pads reach the wear limit, the friction pads must be replaced. Replacing friction pads requires disassembling some parts and requires certain professional skills. Incorrect installation may affect brake performance and even cause accidents. Please contact the Lotus retailer to check or replace.

① Note!

 It is recommended that you regularly drive your vehicle to Lotus retailer for inspection or replacement of brake pads and

- brake discs. If you encounter any problem during driving, please contact Lotus retailer as long as you can ensure your safety.
- Please check the brake pads on both sides of the front or rear wheels at the same time, as the warning does not distinguish between the left and right wheels.
- Due to the use of friction lining material for sport model, brake noise may occur at certain speeds, braking forces and environmental conditions, but the braking performance will not be affected and the vehicle will still drive normally. If you want to understand the vehicle condition further, please contact Lotus retailer.
- Compared with traditional cast iron discs, the carbon ceramic brake discs adopt the different moulding process, thus absorbing water vapour more easily. After the vehicle wades through the water, or is washed or stored in a humid environment for a long time, the brake discs will be covered with water film on its surface. In this case, please brake hard a few times to remove the water film on the surface of the discs and restore the braking performance.

Post impact control (PIC)

The post impact control (PIC) can automatically control the vehicle to stop or reduce its speed after the impact, avoiding or mitigating the risk of subsequent impacts.

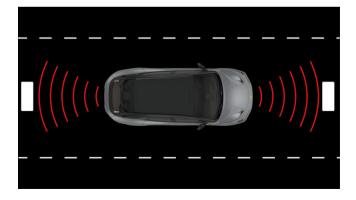
① Note!

When PIC is working, you may hear a continuous sound like rattle from the bonnet, and also feel a vibration from the brake pedal. This is a normal phenomenon caused by the operation of ESC, not a malfunction.

Park assist system

Parking assist (PA)*

When the vehicle is running at a speed of 0~15km/h, the parking assist (PA) can detect and warn of obstacles in the front and rear sides of the vehicle, and alert you of the risk of collision through audible and visual warnings.



The PA system includes parking assist front (PAF) and parking assist rear (PAR), and all of the following conditions need to be met for the system to work:

- The car is powered on.
- The gear is not in P.
- PAF and PAR are turned on.

⚠ Warning!

For safety reasons, drivers shall remain vigilant all the time and always check vehicle surroundings.

The functionality of the ultrasonic sensor can become limited under the following conditions, and messages such as "ultrasonic radar is limited", "please remove the coverings of the front parking radar", "please remove the coverings of the rear parking radar" may appear, due to (but not limited to) the following reasons:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are limited, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by sludge, snow, ice, or car cover).
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.
- The sensor is affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

Ultrasonic sensors may fail to detect irregularly shaped obstacles, low obstacles, obstacles made of special materials, etc. In this regard, you should always focus on the surroundings. Otherwise,

it may cause property damage or personal injury. These obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, or animals.
- Open ground locks, low stone piers, cylinders, thin rods, sharp objects, potholes in the ground, etc.
- Height-limited doors, rods or suspended structures.
- Obstacles at the side of the body that can cause collisions and scratches.
- Bicycles, corners, square columns and corners of parking lot, plastic foam, snowdrifts, etc.

① Note!

- When the ultrasonic radar is dirty or obstructed, please clean or remove the cover in time.
- When any ultrasonic radar sensor fails, the PDC will be invalid and a text prompt will appear on the parking interface.

Limitations of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not work properly in the following situations:

- The car is on a steep slope.
- One or more ultrasonic sensors are dirty or blocked.

- In extreme weather conditions when one of the ultrasonic sensors might become temporarily blocked.
- External interference from electrical equipment or devices.

Visual parking assist (VPA)

VPA captures vehicle surroundings through park assist cameras and displays the detected information on the CSD in order to provide a panoramic view of the vehicle to the driver.

Click the \blacksquare icon on the CSD to select the **Parking** APP and enter the VPA interface. On the VPA interface, slide down or click on the parking app again to exit. When in R gear, you cannot manually turn off the VPA function.

⚠ Warning!

- VPA is an auxiliary function, and the driver shall constantly pay attention to vehicle surroundings.
- The distance from the person/object/obstruction to the vehicle shown on the CSD may be closer than the actual distance.

The normal operation of VPA depends on the surround view camera sensor. The function might have limited functionality under the following circumstances:

 The camera mounting position is changed, or the camera is blocked or stained, out of focus, faulty, etc.

- The surroundings are dim, such as at dawn, dusk, night, in tunnels, or under large shadows cast by buildings, scenery or large vehicles.
- The brightness of the surroundings suddenly changes, such as at tunnel entrances or exits.
- The sun shines obliquely or directly on the camera.
- Under bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, and haze.

① Note!

- When any parking assist camera fails, a red triangle warning symbol will appear on the VPA interface.
- The VPA will be automatically enabled when the R gear is engaged. In P gear, after a period of time VPA will be automatically closed.
- The VPA can be activated as long as the vehicle speed stays below 20km/h.
- Dynamic effect of blind spot filling is observed around the model as indicated by VPA, and there is actually a 30cm blind spot. Thus, VPA cannot take place of visual inspection. You must always focus on traffic conditions and the road environment and drive the vehicle when it is safe to do so.

View switching



- 1. Panoramic image view
- 2. Automatic parking view
- 3. Setting switch

Setting VPA



- 1. Smart obstacle trigger
- 2. Trajectory lines
- 3. Warning Volume

When the smart obstacle trigger is enabled, if you encounter obstacles in a close distance, the parking camera interface will automatically pop up.

When the trajectory lines is enabled, the trajectory lines generated on the CSD will simulate the projection of the vehicle on the ground. With the trajectory, you can view the path that the vehicle will pass through. The system will adjust the trajectory accordingly as the steering wheel is turned.

When obstacle marking is enabled, detected obstacles appearing in the panoramic view will be marked and a warning sound will be triggered if they get too close. You can turn off the warning sound or set the warning sound level to high, medium or low.

Autonomous parking assist (APA)*

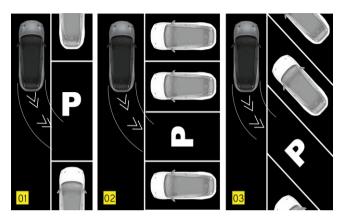
The autonomous parking assist (APA) can identify the surrounding environment, automatically search for parking spaces around the vehicle, and prompt you to park when an available parking space is found. You can follow the system prompts after stopping the vehicle, so that APA can control the steering, speed and gear of the vehicle, and automatically drive the vehicle into the selected parking space.

⚠ Warning!

- Even when APA is activated, the driver shall always be responsible to intervene actively and override the vehicle as necessary.
- Do not use APA on sloped or potholed roads.
- The performance of APA depends on the capability of the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor to detect and identify the environment. When using the environmental camera and ultrasonic sensor, check if they are damaged or in an abnormal installation position. The left and right surround view cameras are mounted on the outside wing mirrors, thus you

- should check whether the outside wing mirrors are deployed and in the correct position. In case that any of the left/right outside wing mirrors, surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors is damaged or in an abnormal position, do not use APA.
- Check whether there are pedestrians, children, animals, and other thin, pointed, low, suspended obstacles (e.g., ground locks, low stone piers, road cones, thin poles, sharp objects, wall corners, square columns, steps and corners of parking lot) that may affect the detection of the ultrasonic sensors around the vehicle.
- As a driving assist function, APA cannot deal with all traffic, weather, road and light conditions. You must always focus on traffic conditions and the road environment and decide whether to use this function under the premise of ensuring safety.
- If you find that it is better not to use APA under current traffic conditions or there are other unsafe factors, you shall always be prepared to take over the vehicle. Remember that you are ultimately responsible for the safe parking.

APA can support three kinds of parking spaces: parallel, vertical, and inclined.



During the autonomous parking, the vehicle can be overridden by any of the following ways:

- Active shifting.
- Operating the steering wheel to turn.

Autonomous park-in

- 1. Click on the 🛱 icon on the central display screen, select the **Parking** APP, click on the 🖸 icon in the view interface to enter the parking space search mode.
- 2. Drive your car to search for an available parking space.



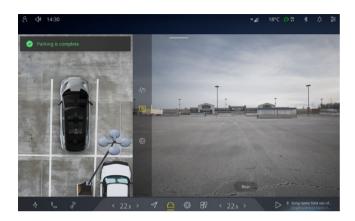
3. If an available parking space is found, depress the brake pedal to stop the car stably and click the **IN CAR** button.



4. Follow the instructions to release the brake pedal and steering wheel, and start to automatically drive into the parking space.



5. When the autonomous parking is completed, the CSD will show that the parking is completed.



⚠ Warning!

- Always observe your surroundings and follow APA's instructions.
- Before autonomous park-in, be sure to confirm the identified parking space.

① Note!

When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the optimal parking space. If the originally recommended parking space is occupied by obstacles, the system will automatically recommend other parking spaces for you. You can also choose the parking space you need independently. Before parking, please ensure that the parking space is not occupied by obstacles to avoid parking interruption due to obstacles during the parking process.

- In the process of parking, when there are obstacles on both sides, in order to ensure safety, the speed of the vehicle will be appropriately reduced, if one side of the obstacle (such as a square column) is too close to the parking line, the parking target parking position will be appropriately offset to avoid scratching.
- APA is not effective in all situations and it is only used to provide assist in parking into parallel, inclined or vertical spaces.
- After the autonomous park-in is completed, you may need to adjust the vehicle' position further to ensure proper parking.

Limitations of APA

APA will be terminated and exited forcedly when any of the following conditions occur, at this time, the driver must take over control of the vehicle:

- The parking space is too small.
- Speeding or overtime at parking.
- The camera is blocked or the sensor is disturbed.

① Note!

- If the vehicle is parked in a space close to the kerb by APA, the running path set by the APA may exceed the curb, so the driver needs to shift gears according to the actual situation to prevent the raised road shoulder from damaging the tyres or wheels.
- Using non-original tyres or incorrect inflation pressure may affect the performance of APA.

The APA may not work as expected in the following road conditions (including but not limited to):

- The road surface is uneven or has steps; In this condition, do not use APA. APA is only available on flat roads.
- If the curb material is special or cannot be detected, the tire rim of the vehicle will be at risk of being damaged by the curb, please take over the vehicle in a timely manner.

When the functionality of the ultrasonic sensor(s) is limited, it may cause the APA to become inoperative or not operate as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, misaligned, or obscured (e.g., by mud, snow or ice).
- The performance of ultrasonic sensors is affected by rain, snow, fog, haze and other bad weathers.
- The sensor is affected by other electrical equipment or devices that can cause interference.

The recognition capability of surround view cameras is limited and this may cause the APA to be inoperative or not to work as expected in the following conditions (including but not limited to):

- The left/right outside wing mirror or the front/rear of vehicle is damaged, causing the surround view camera to be positioned abnormally.
- The surround view camera is stained (e.g., by mud, snow or ice) or blocked.
- Under strong sunlight or in the shadow of mottled trees.
- The ground is reflective or has accumulated water.
- The parking space is in unconventional size (too narrow or too wide) or paved with floor tiles.
- When the contrast between the parking space line and the ground is low.

Others:

- If there is a trailer attached to the rear of the vehicle, do not use APA.
- If the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or spare wheels, do not use APA.
- If the loaded object protrudes from the vehicle, do not use APA.

Remote parking assist (RPA)*

The remote parking assist (RPA) enables the vehicle to be driven into a parking space automatically through the control from the mobile APP after the APA recognizes an available parking space.

⚠ Warning!

When using RPA, always ensure that the vehicle is within the visual range and keep observing the surroundings of the vehicle. If there is a safety risk, you should release the auto park-in button on the mobile APP in time to stop the vehicle.

Using the features of RPA requires the mobile phone to be bluetooth enabled and in range of connection.

① Note!

- RPA function is effective within 6m. However, due to the restrictions of bluetooth signal, you may need to use it close to the vehicle.
- RPA will automatically exit after a long pause.

Park-in with RPA

1. Click on the 🛱 icon on the central display screen, select the **Parking** APP, click on the 🖸 icon in the view interface to enter the parking space search mode.

2. Drive your car to search for an available parking space.



When an available parking space is detected, depress the brake pedal to stop the car stably. The driver can get out of the car with valid key and phone carried after clicking the REMOTE PARKING button.



4. Open the mobile APP outside the vehicle, select **More**, and clik the **Remote Parking** button.



By holding the Long press to park button, the vehicle will be driven into the parking space automatically. After the park-in is completed, the vehicle will be powered off automatically and locked.



① Note!

When multiple parking spaces are found, the system will recommend the optimal parking space. If the originally recommended parking space is occupied by obstacles, the system will automatically recommend other parking spaces for you. You can also choose the parking space you need independently. Before parking, please ensure that the parking space is not occupied by obstacles to avoid parking interruption due to obstacles during the parking process. When the car is automatically moving into the parking space, you need to press and hold the Long press to park button. If the button is released, the car will stop moving.

Limitations of RPA

RPA is an extension of APA and has the same limitations as those of APA(p.269). The precautions and limitations of APA also apply to RPA.

Driver fatigue detection



Driver fatigue detection camera

The driver monitoring system tracks the driver's condition using the driver monitoring system camera. If the system determines that the

driver is experiencing fatigue at speeds over 10km/h, messages will appear on the instrument panel, and the lane keeping assist (LKA) and automatic emergency braking (AEB), if not already active, will be enabled until the driver is alert again. A notification card appears on the CSD to warn the driver and promote driving safety.



⚠ Warning!

- Driver fatigue detection is an auxiliary system and cannot actively intervene in driving operations. You must always maintain attention and take active control of the car.
- Never drive when you feel fatigued. You must always maintain healthy and awake while driving.

Do not ignore the warning given by the driver fatigue detection.
 After the system issues a fatigue driving warning, you should adjust driving behaviour or stop for a rest in time.

① Note!

- According to the driver's actual status, the driver fatigue detection system activates the fatigue alarm when the driver's eyes are closed for a period of time.
- when the driver's eyes are keeping closed or excessive blinking for a period of time, the autonomous emergency braking and lane departure warning functions will be activated automatically until the driver looks ahead.

Setting driver fatigue detection



Driver fatigue detection setting interface

Click the @ icon on CSD, and select **Safety** to switch to the setting interface, where you can click to turn **Fatigue detection** on or off.

① Note!

- The driver fatigue detection opened by default.
- When the driver fatigue detection camera is blocked or malfunctioning, D! will be illuminated and the driver status cannot be monitored.
- Driver fatigue detection does not work properly when the system does not properly monitor the driver's face. The driver needs to adjust the steering wheel or seat position correctly to

ensure that the driver fatigue detection camera is within your direct vision and the driver fatigue detection works properly.

Limitations of driver fatigue detection

Driver fatigue detection may not work properly in the following situations:

- Wearing infrared impenetrable sunglasses, masks or other accessories that will cover the face.
- There is intense lighting that reduces the camera's monitoring ability.
- System misjudgement due to driver's operation.
- System failure (such as camera, radar, braking, steering, etc.).





Notes to users

The car is equipped with a high-tech IHU, which is applied with intelligent technology configurations to meet your needs in different driving scenarios.

⚠ Warning!

When operating the CSD, be sure to stop the vehicle in a safe place, and engage into P gear, otherwise a safety accident may occur.

L Caution!

- Do not operate the display using sharp objects, as this will cause irreparable damage to the CSD.
- Do not modify or replace the IHU by yourself without permission to avoid damage to the system.
- If you notice any faults with the CSD itself, be sure to contact Lotus retailer in a timely manner.

① Note!

Due to the presence of a light sensor below the CSD, do not obstruct it to avoid affecting the normal use of the CSD.

Introduction to CSD gestures



Click



Slide up



Slide down



Slide left



Slide right



Slide up and down



Zoom out with two fingers



Zoom in with two fingers



Press and hold

Restart the Central Screen Display (CSD)

If you need to restart the CSD, perform the following operations:

 To restart the CSD, move the multi-function buttons on both sides of the steering wheel with both hands and hold them for a period of time.



Restart buttons

 After locking the vehicle for a period of time, you can unlock it again to restart the CSD.

① Note!

If the CSD stalls, does not respond, the network connection fails, or other exceptions occur, restart the central display.

Central screen display

Start-up guidance



When you activate the CSD at the first time or factory reset, you need to select the language, tick the appropriate boxes and then you can click **NEXT** to set it up.



After scanning the QR code in the CSD and successfully logging in, the system assumes that you have read and agreed to the "Lotus Head Unit Terminal User Service Agreement".

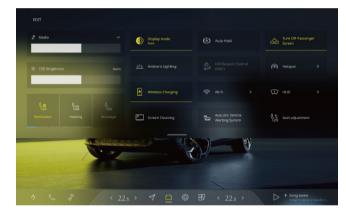
Desktop



- User centre
- 2. Quickly adjust the ADAS settings
- 3. Mute mode
- 4. Multifunctional panel
- 5. Time
- 6. Network
- 7. Temperature and air quality
- 8. Bluetooth
- 9. Notification center
- 10. Information cards

- 11. Mini player
- 12. Air conditioning
- 13. APP centre
- 14. Set up
- 15. Garage
- 16. Navigation
- 17. Quick application

Shortcut panel



Swipe down on the top of the centre display to open the shortcut panel. Tap the function tab to quickly turn on/off the corresponding

function or jump to the setting interface of the corresponding function.

Garage



- 1. Central lock
- 2. Panoramic canopy adjustment switch*
- 3. Tailgate switch
- 4. Active rear wing switch*
- 5. Integrated charging port cover switch

Vehicle use preference function



Preference setting interface

You can adjust the position of the seat, steering wheel, outside mirrors, and the height and brightness of the head-up display (HUD) according to your daily usage habits and actual usage requirements. Click **SAVE** to save the current adjusted configuration information to your current preference. To save or create preferences, you can click your profile picture in the upper left corner of the CSD to view and manage them.

! Caution!

Do not obstruct the automatic adjustment of the seat, otherwise the seat may be damaged.

① Note!

During the automatic adjustment of the seat, if the seat position is manually adjusted, the automatic adjustment of seat will be stopped.

Network settings

Wi-Fi network settings



Click the $\frac{\circ}{\circ^{\circ}}$ icon in the CSD to open the Wi-Fi setting interface. Enable the Wi-Fi network and activate the hotspot function in your phone, then you can find your phone's hotspot name in the **Networks Found** . Click connect, and the Wi-Fi network setting is completed.

Vehicle hotspot settings



Click the occasion in the CSD to open the vehicle hotspot setting interface. Enable the vehicle hotspot and enable the Wi-Fi connection of the mobile phone or other devices, then you can find the vehicle hotspot name on the mobile phone or other devices. Tap Connect, and the vehicle hotspot setting is successful.

Network reset

When the network status is poor, you can click the icon © on the CSD, click **NETWORK RESET** on the **System** setting interface, and restart the vehicle system to reconnect to the network after a period of time.



Bluetooth settings



Click the bluetooth settings icon \$ in the upper right corner of the CSD to turn this function on or off. You can modify the name of the car at the bottom of the bluetooth setting interface. When you first use your mobile phone to connect with the car, you can find the name of the car in the bluetooth search bar of the mobile phone to connect and pair. You can also search for nearby bluetooth devices by clicking **Device Search** in the bluetooth setting interface. After the search is completed, you can find the name of your phone in the device bar, and click to select the bluetooth playback options you need to connect to (Phone, Music, Videos). Once connected, your phone name will appear in the connected devices bar.

⚠ Warning!

Do not operate your phone in hazardous areas such as fuel storage areas and chemical stations.

Android Auto

Android Auto can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, voice assistant and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

- 1. Android Auto can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing the smartphone through (p.287) as a bluetooth device first.
- After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Android Auto will pop up on the CSD. Click Start to complete the connection.



 After Android Auto is connected, there will be an ♠ icon in the upper left corner of the CSD, and the ♠ icon in the device list will light up.



① Note!

You can click the \triangle icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Android Auto connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

- Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the CSD.
- Delete the vehicle information through Setting More Connections - Android Auto on your Android Phone.
- 3. Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device via Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the Android Phone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box via a data cable, and click Confirm on the phone to complete the connection.



① Note!

The pop-up on the phone is sued to agree to sharing contacts.

Disconnection

Click the \triangle icon in the device list on the CSD to disconnect Android Auto.



① Note!

Do not delete it on your Android Phone via **Android Auto** , otherwise Android Auto cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Android Auto

After Android Auto is connected, you can click the **A** icon in the upper left corner of the CSD to expand/collapse Android Auto.

① Note!

You can collapse Android Auto by sliding down. Both Android Auto and Apple CarPlay will run full screen in a short time due to an update.

Limitations of Android Auto

Android Auto, Apple CarPlay and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive.

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Android Auto and Apple CarPlay cannot be connected at the same time.
- After Android Auto is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay can be connected by means of wireless or wired connection to enjoy smartphone features such as music, navigation, Siri and phone calls on the vehicle.

Wireless connection

- 1. Apple CarPlay can be connected wirelessly by Bluetooth pairing the smartphone through (p.287).
- After Bluetooth pairing is successful, a prompt for connecting Apple CarPlay will pop up on the CSD. Click connect Apple CarPlay, and click AGREE on the smartphone to complete the connection.



 After Apple CarPlay is connected, there will be a € icon in the upper left corner of the CSD, and the € icon in the device list will light up.



① Note!

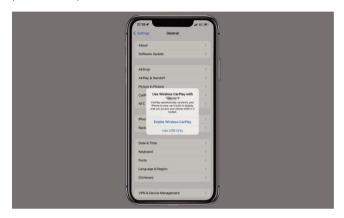
You can click the \odot icon in the device list for quick connection after the first successful connection.

If the Apple CarPlay connection fails, you can try the following steps to connect again:

- 1. Delete the phone information from the Bluetooth device list on the CSD.
- 2. Delete the vehicle information through **Setting General - CarPlay** on your iPhone.
- Refresh the Bluetooth device list and pair your device via Bluetooth again.

Wired connection

Connect the iPhone to the left USB-C data transmission interface in the front armrest box via a data cable, and click **Confirm** on the phone to complete the connection.



Description of Apple CarPlay function

After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can activate Siri by saying "Hey Siri" or by holding the menu/voice button on the right side of the steering wheel.



Siri can only be used by the driver.

Disconnection

Click the $\ensuremath{\mathfrak{E}}$ icon in the device list on the CSD to disconnect Apple CarPlay.



① Note!

Do not delete it on your iPhone via CarPlay, otherwise Apple CarPlay cannot be connected again.

Expanding/collapsing Apple CarPlay

After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can expand/collapse Apple CarPlay in the following ways:

- Click the ⓒ icon in the upper left corner of the CSD to expand/collapse Apple CarPlay.
- Click the B icon on the CSD, and select **Apple CarPlay** to turn it on.

① Note!

You cannot collapse the Apple CarPlay sliding down.

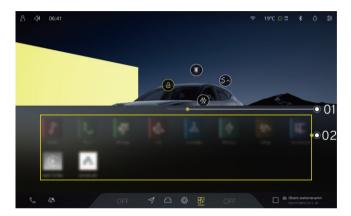
Limitations of Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay, Android Auto and Bluetooth are mutually exclusive.

- Only one screen projection application is supported at one time, and Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot be connected at the same time.
- After Apple CarPlay is connected, you can only connect another device's Bluetooth media.

System application

Application center



- Deactivation area: click or swipe down on the area to close the application management interface.
- 2. Application: press and hold the application icon and drag to sort. If there is a new version of the application, tap the update button on the icon to update the application.

Click the \blacksquare icon on the CSD to open the application management interface. Tap the application icon on the application management interface to open the corresponding application.

① Note!

If no action is taken on the CSD for a period of time, the system application interface will be deactivated automatically.

Multimedia

You can open the multimedia interface from the application center.



- 1. Radio
- 2. USB-C playback
- 3. Bluetooth playback
- 4. Online multimedia
- 5. Sound settings

Radio

Tap the $\overline{\overline{a}}$ icon on the radio interface to search and automatically play the radio station found. Tap the radio channel or play icon to turn on or off playback.

You can tap the \heartsuit icon corresponding to the radio channel to favourite the channel, and the favourited channel will be saved in the favourites list.

In areas with DAB channel coverage, you can select FM or DAB radio stations by sliding up or down in the **STATION LIST**.



Bluetooth playback

After your mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via bluetooth, you can open the bluetooth playback interface to play the songs in your mobile phone.

USB-C playback

When an USB-C disk is connected to the vehicle USB-C interface, the songs in the USB-C disk can be played by opening the USB-C playback interface.

You can select different song playback modes on the USB-C playback interface or directly select the songs you want to play according to your preferences.

Sound

Equalizer tuning



You can click on the @ icon through CSD, select **Sound**. In clear original sound mode, you can turn on or off the sound customisation function. After turning on the equalizer sound effect, you can click **EQUALIZER** to enter the equalizer tuning interface.

In this interface, the bass, midrange and treble frequency bands can be adjusted according to personal listening habits, and each frequency band has three stages of positive and negative to choose from. In the bass section, the variation amplitude of each stage is 2 dB; The midrange and treble segments vary by 1 dB per order.

The vehicle's CSD/RSD screen can be adjusted synchronously, and the adjusted scheme will be memorized.

Equalizer tuning is not possible in **STAGE** mode and **SPATIAL** mode.

Decrease media volume while doors open

You can click the o icon on the central display screen, select **Sound**, and in this interface, click to turn on or off the **Decrease** media volume while doors open function.

This function prevents the media volume from being too loud and disturbing pedestrians around when the door is opened.

When multimedia is playing, if any vehicle door is opened, the system will lower the media volume. When all doors are closed, the media volume will resume. During the period when the system lowers the media volume, if you manually adjust the media volume, the system will prioritize the volume you adjusted.

Voice

The car is equipped with Lotus personal assistant, by which you can control the activation and deactivation of some functions of vehicle.



Lotus personal assistant dialogue box

To wake up the voice function, you can say the wake-up words ("Hi, Lotus" or "Hello, Lotus" by default) or press the voice button on the right side of the steering wheel. When the voice function responds to your wake-up, a voice broadcast bubble will appear in the CSD.

Here are some of the voice demonstrations:

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
Basic function	Smart voice wake-up	Hi, Lotus Hello Lotus
Navigation	Initiate navigation	Start navigation

Function classification	Desired function Dialogue example	
	Inquire about your location	Where am i?
	Navigate to a point of interest	Drive/Navigate to [location]
	Cancel navigation	Cancel navigation
	Display nearby charging stations	Show nearby charging station
	Go to frequently visited places	Drive home/to office
Climate controls	Turn on/off front A/C	Turn on/off A/C
	Adjust the temperature	Increase/Decrease temperature
		Set the temperatur to 26°C
	Turn on/off rear A/C	Turn on/off rear A/C
	Adjust the air volume	Increase/Decrease fan speed
	Adjust the air volume	Set the tempo/fan speed to 5th gear

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Turn on/off seat heating	Turn on/off seat heating
	Turn on/off seat ventilation	Turn on/off seat ventilation
	Turn on/off steering wheel heating	Turn on/off steering wheel heating
	Call a contact	Call [contact name/ phone number]
	View contact list	Open contact list
	View recent calls list	Open recent calls list
Phone	text	Send a messsage to [contact name/phone number]
	Turn on the Bluetooth phone	Turn on the Bluetooth phone Turn on the phone
	Play/pause radio	Play/pause radio
Media	Play the designated radio station	Play [radio station name]
	Play/pause music	Play/pause music

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example	
	Switch music	Previous/next song	
	Switch music source	Play bluetooth-/ USB-/online music	
	Adjust the volume	Increase/decrease volume	
		Set the volume to 20	
System settings	Mute/unmute	Mute/unmute	
	Turn on/off head-up display	Turn on/off HUD	
	Adjust the brightness of the central control screen	Increase/decrease brightness	
	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth	Trun on WiFi/ bluetooth	
	Adjust navigation volume	Incease/decrease navigation volume	
	Adjust the voice assistant volume	Incease/decrease voice assistant volume	
	Mute/unmute voice guidance	Mute/unmute voice guidance	

Function classification	Desired function	Dialogue example
	Inquire about the time at a certain location	What time is it in [location]
	Inquire about the day of the week at a certain location	What day is it today in [location]?
	Inquire about the weather at a certain location	How is the weather in [location]?
Vehicle controls	Open/close all windows	Open/close all windows
	Open front left/right window	Open front left/right window
	Open/close trunk	Open/close trunk
	Turn on/off the ambient lighting	Turn on/off the ambient lighting
	Inquire about remaining range	How far can i drive?

⚠ Warning!

When using Lotus personal assistant to control the vehicle, it is important to pay attention to the surrounding environment and the passengers of the vehicle to avoid accidental injuries.

① Note!

- When using the Lotus personal assistant, please pronounce it correctly to avoid the system being unable to recognize or recognizing it incorrectly.
- In order to continuously improve quality, Lotus collects and processes voice command transcription text. However, in order to further protect your privacy, these transcribed contents will not be associated with your Lotus account or vehicle identification code.

Phone

Click ${}^{\mathbb{Q}}$ icon in **Application program** interface to enable phone bluetooth interface.



Once the phone is connected to the vehicle via bluetooth, communication can be carried out via the phone bluetooth.



When you make a call, the information and operation of the call are displayed on the left side of CSD.

⚠ Warning!

- Do not use mobile phones in areas of high explosion risk.
 Otherwise, sparks may generate, which could cause a fire or explosion.
- Be sure to operate this function when road conditions permit or when the vehicle is stationary.

Answer/end/reject bluetooth calls using steering wheel buttons

When you receive a call reminder on the central display screen, you can use the multifunction buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to answer/end/reject bluetooth calls.

- When you need to answer a bluetooth phone call, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel to answer the bluetooth phone call.
- When you need to hang up a bluetooth phone, you can press the middle button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel twice continuously to hang up the bluetooth phone.
- When you want to reject a bluetooth phone call, first press the right button of the multifunction button on the right side of the steering wheel, and then press the middle button to reject the bluetooth phone call.



- 1. Right multifunction button left button
- 2. Right multifunction button middle key
- 3. Right multifunction button right button

Navigation

This vehicle is equipped with HERE Maps, which can provide navigation service for your travel.



This function is only available with network connection.

Overview of navigation interface



- Springboard: gives different possibilities to set or search for a destination.
- 2. Search icon: opens the springboard.
- 3. Traffic Information
- 4. Navigation settings
- 5. Mute/unmute voice prompts
- 6. Re-center: tap to return to current position.
- View switch: toggles between 3D view, 2D view, and 2D north up.
- 8. Range map
- 9. Switch between standard map and satellite map

Route planning



Springboard

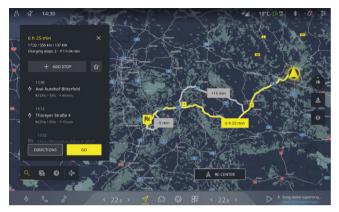
The springboard gives different possibilities to set or search for a destination.

- 1. The search bar allows you to enter keywords.
- 2. Point of Interests: a quick search for different categories nearby.
- 3. It is possible to set your home, work or favourite destination to guickly navigate to these destinations.
- **4.** Recent destinations: shows the last destinations you have navigated to.
- 5. Planned trips: allows you to plan a route and save it.
- 6. Lotus: shows you nearby lotus dealerships or service station.

While planning a route, the navigation system will provide information about the estimated time of arrival, total distance and the remaining battery level after reaching the destination. You will also get the possibility to choose alternative routes.

EV routing calculates consumption of the vehicle on the route using the Lotus Eletre-specific consumption model. Charging stops required to reach the destination are automatically defined respective to the user's defined minimum SOC expectation at charge stops and at the destination. If the consumption pattern changes or a waypoint or the destination cannot be reached with the remaining charge, additional charge stops are automatically added by the application.

You can click on **Settings** - **Route planning** - **Automatic charging** in the navigation interface and choose to turn this function on/off.



Route planning

Range on route visualizes the remaining vehicle range on its active route.

Range on map visualizes the remaining range on the map, implemented as a map view mode.

The EV routing algorithm takes the in-APP preferences set by the user and central parameters set by Lotus into consideration. EV routing updates the range on map every time the user opens the view. Range on route is updated automatically when conditions change and on regular intervals.

This feature can be found by clicking on the range map icon &.



Range on Map/Range on Route

Navigation mode



During navigation, information such as turning information, estimated time of arrival, remaining time, remaining distance and traffic condition information will be displayed.



If desired, the Intersection View can also be displayed.

This can be switched on in **Settings/Guidance/Intersection View** .



When you arrive at your destination, the navigation system will give you the option to search for parking places nearby.

Navigation setting



Click the Settings icon to enter the map setting interface.

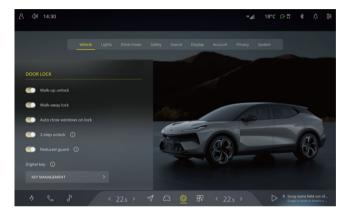
- Modify routing preferences, e.g. real-time-traffic information.
- Adjust charging preferences, e.g. define preferred charge speed or providers for charging station search.
- Turn on intersection View.
- Download maps for offline use.



Automatic offline map update: offline map data is automatically updated when the Internet is connected, keeping offline data up-to-date.

Set up

Vehicle



This screen allows you to set door lock, sunroof transparency, drive control, and other functions.

Lights



This interface allows you to set up external and internal lighting.

Internal light: the on/off, colour and brightness of the ambinet lamps can be adjusted.

External light: adaptive light switch, tourist mode.

Drive mode



In this interface, you can set the drive mode, and in some driving modes, you can set the body height. The driving mode includes track mode*, individual mode, sport mode, tour mode, range mode and off-road mode.

Safety



In this interface, the drive assist, active safety and passenger safety can be set.

Click on the $^{\oplus}$ icon in the upper left corner of the central display screen to quickly open the **Safety** interface.

Sound



In this interface, you can set the sound, sound optimization, volume and other functions.

You can also adjust the volume in the following ways:

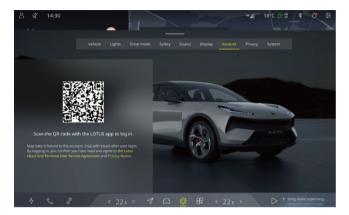
- Click the multifunction panel on the CSD, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume of multimedia, navigation, phone, and voice.
- Click the volume settings on the rear display screen, and click or drag the slider to adjust the volume.
- Turn down the menu/voice button on the right side of the steering wheel or activate the voice function to adjust the volume. The range of voice adjustment is 1 to 27.

Display



This interface can be set for the central display, passenger display, rear display, etc.

Account



Scan the QR code to log in to your account. After entering the user interface, you can switch or log out the account, and manage and set the third-party application party account.

You can also tap the profile photo in the upper left corner of the CSD to quickly enter and set up the services you need.

Privacy



This interface allows you to perform privacy settings, view the Lotus privacy policy.



When the relevant privacy functions are not enabled, some functions of the vehicle cannot be used properly.

System



In this interface, you can set language, notification, date and time, unit, and other content.

OTA system upgrade operation

When a prompt appears on the central display screen, you need to connect to a secure Wi-Fi connection or mobile hotspot. If the vehicle is already connected to Wi-Fi, you will not see this prompt.

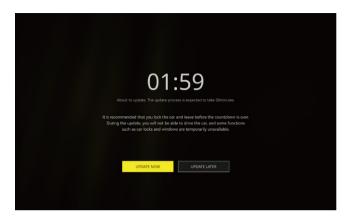
The download happens automatically in the background when the car is connected to Wi-Fi or a mobile hotspot, and when the car is active.



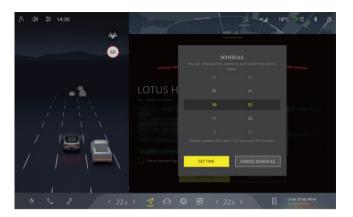
You can open the OTA system upgrade interface by clicking $\underline{\psi}$ icon at the top of the central display or clicking $\underline{\mathfrak{G}}$ icon and selecting System - Check for update from the setting interface. The update information field will show the purpose, items, the estimated time required for the upgrade, the impact of the upgrade on the vehicle functions and any notes related to the upgrade.



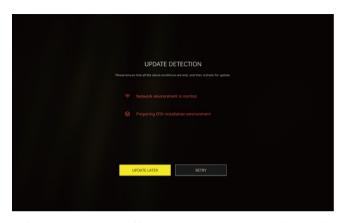
After entering the OTA upgrade interface, you need to read and agree to the **Software Remote Update Service Terms** . After you agree, you can select **SCHEDULE** or **UPDATE NOW** .



After selecting Update Now, the countdown prompt box will be displayed on the CSD. You can wait for the countdown to end and start the automatic upgrade; You can also choose to upgrade immediately to skip the countdown, or choose not to upgrade temporarily.



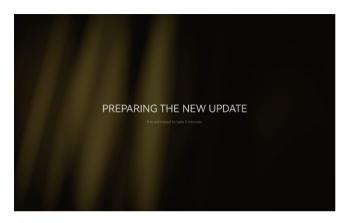
You can also schedule an OTA system upgrade at any time within 24 hours. Once set, the scheduled upgrade icon will be displayed at the upper right of the interface. The system will automatically start the OTA upgrade at the scheduled time when the network is connected.



Before the upgrade is officially started, the system will test the upgrade prerequisites. If the test fails, the failed items need to be confirmed one by one. After the upgrade conditions are confirmed to be met, you can tap **RETRY** to try upgrading again.



After the official start of the upgrade, the system upgrade process will continue for a period of time depending on the version. After the upgrade is completed, the system will restart accompanied with a brief black screen.



After the upgrade is completed, the system will enter the preparation process, which is expected to take 1-2 minutes.

Be sure to operate this function after your vehicle has been parked in a safe area and in P gear, otherwise it may cause upgrade failure, or even personal injury or death.

① Note!

If the OTA system upgrade fails, the Lotus Customer Care Centre should be contacted immediately.

Upgrade notes

Please ensure that the vehicle meets all the following conditions before OTA upgrade:

- The vehicle is parked in a safe area and in P gear.
- The network connection to vehicle is normal.
- The high voltage battery of the vehicle is greater than 20% SOC.
- The vehicle is not in state of charge.

Rear display



- Time
- 2. Lifting or folding of rear display*

- 3. Volume settings
- 4. Air conditioning
- 5. Set up
- 6. Multimedia
- 7. Screen off

⚠ Warning!

The rear display has an anti-clip function when it is put away. However, to ensure safety, do not put your hands or other objects under the rear display to avoid clamping your hands or damaging the rear display.

L Caution!

You can click on the $\square t$ icon in the rear display screen to control the lifting or retraction of the rear display screen. Do not use violent pressure to prevent damage to the rear display screen.

① Note!

After the vehicle is locked, the rear display screen will automatically fold up. Some models do not support the rear display function of raising or retracting.

Rear display lock

When you want to prevent rear passengers from operating the rear display, you can tap the p icon on the CSD, select **Display** and the tap **Rear display lock** to turn on or off the rear display locking function.



After you turn on the **Rear display lock** function, tapping the rear display will briefly light up the screen, where the method of reopening the rear display will appear. If you do not operate for a period of time, the rear display be will automatically locked.





Necessity of maintenance

Please follow the routine maintenance schedule in this manual to ensure the normal use of the vehicle and a good ride experience, and to reduce the possible maintenance costs incurred.

The routine maintenance in this manual requires the joint participation of you (the user) and Lotus retailer, and shall be carried out according to the relevant instructions specified in this manual.

Considering the complexity of the vehicle system, we strongly recommend that you go to Lotus retailer for maintenance and repair. This is to ensure your safety.

If you have any questions about this, please contact Lotus retailer for more information.

Daily maintenance

Daily maintenance is an important measure to keep the car in good condition, ensure its normal use, driving safety and reduce vehicle failures. You should refer to the relevant instructions in this manual to complete the daily maintenance items before driving. If any abnormality is found, please contact the Lotus retailer in time. The daily maintenance items are mainly including the following:

- Check the power of the high voltage battery.
- Check all exterior lights, horns, direction indicator lamps, hazard warning lamps for proper operation. Check if any indicator lamps on the instrument cluster come on abnormally.
- Check seat belts and parking brake for proper operation.
- Check the door windows for proper operation.
- Check the wipers and windscreen washer for normal operation, check the wiper washer fluid level, and add if necessary.
- Check if the pressure of each tyre is normal. Check if there is any damage to the tyres (such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges). Check if there is abnormal wear on the tread and remove foreign objects from the tread. Check the tyre for wear (whether it has reached the wear mark position).
- Check if the wheels are functioning properly and if there is any corrosion, deformation, or cracking caused by impact, collision, or contamination with corrosive liquids. If you are unable to determine whether there is an abnormality on your own, please contact the Lotus retailer in a timely manner.
- When driving in low temperature or icy/snowy environments, in order to avoid corrosion or damage to the wheels and brake calipers by deicing agents, it is recommended to check the surface of the wheels and brake calipers for ice and snow accumulation in a timely manner and remove them in a timely manner.

Scheduled maintenance

To maintain warranty validation and help ensure proper safety, performance and dependability of the vehicle, Lotus Cars requires that the vehicle be serviced in accordance with latest version of the maintenance schedule.

Each service should be performed within 30,000 km or 24 months of the previous service, whichever occurs first.

See the table below for specific information relating to items replaced, fluids changed, and other operations carried out during servicing; for further information please contact any authorised Lotus Customer Care Centre.

Inspection items	Every 2 years or 30,000 km
Cabin pollen filter	R
Brake fluid	R
Battery coolant	I
Wiper blades	I
Brake system	I

Inspection items	Every 2 years or 30,000 km
Air conditioning system	I
Windshield washer fluid	I
I: check; correct, clean, add, adjust, transpose as necessary	, lubricate or replace
R: replace	

In addition to the items in the table above, coolants must be changed every 5 years or 100,000km; the drive motor transmission lubricant (TZ264XY000)* must be changed every 4 years or 80.000km, whichever comes first.

Additional maintenance items or shorter service intervals may be required if the car is regularly driven in the following harsh conditions.

- Often in a highly dusty conditions.
- Often in severe cold (below 0°C) or high (above 40°C) temperatures.
- Often in wet conditions or frequently wading in water.
- Often on roads with salty or corrosive materials.
- Frequent braking or driving in hilly areas.
- Used for operational activities or for special purposes such as frequent use under high loads.

Used for racing or competitive activities.

Precautions for maintenance

If the vehicle is left unused for a long time, it is recommended that you go to your Lotus retailer for a comprehensive inspection and maintenance.

Warranty coverage

This manual applies to the model purchased and used by users in any country in Europe where the Lotus retailer is present. If the vehicles specified in this manual are subject to failures or defects that occur within the warranty period for any reasons other than the user factor, natural phenomenon and other external influences, Lotus will use original parts (including Lotus approved parts) and provide repair services in a reasonable and effective manner that complies with Lotus maintenance standards, and bear related costs.

Warranty period

The vehicle warranty period specified in this manual and the warranty period for replacement parts at the user's own expense are detailed in the following table:

Vehicle warranty			
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period	
High Voltage Components	HV battery, electric drive systems (drive motors, drive motor controller assemblies, reducers)	96 months or 200,000 km (the high voltage battery should maintain at least 70% SOH within the warranty period)	
Basic warranty	The whole vehicle and except the parts below	60 months or 150,000 km	
Consumable parts	Pollen filter	12 months or 30,000 km	
	Brake pads	12 months or 16,000 km	
	12V battery	Unlimited mileage for 24 months	
	Wiper blades	12 months or 16,000 km	
	Key fob battery	6 months or 10,000 km	

Vehicle warranty		
Classify	Content	Limited warranty period
	Fuses and general purpose relays (excluding ECU)	12 months or 16,000 km
	Tyre (tyre warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer)	6 months or 10,000 km
Vehicle body corrosion (through holes in the vehicle body panel from the inside out)		Unlimited mileage for 12 years
Paint warranty		Unlimited mileage for 5 years

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Customer's own expense replacement parts warranty				
Classify	Classify Content Limited warra			
Key parts	HV battery, electric drive systems (drive motors, drive motor controller assemblies, reducers)	Unlimited mileage for 24 months		

Customer's own expense replacement parts warranty			
Classify Content		Limited warranty period	
Wear and tear parts	Pollen filter	12 months or 30,000 km	
	Brake pads	12 months or 16,000 km	
	12V battery	Unlimited mileage for 24 months	
	Tyre (tyre warranty is covered by the tyre manufacturer)	6 months or 10,000 km	
	Wiper blades	12 months or 16,000 km	
	Key fob battery	6 months or 10,000 km	
	Fuses and general purpose relays (excluding ECU)	12 months or 16,000 km	
Accessories not mentioned above		Unlimited mileage for 24 months	

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

The warranty does not cover the following:

- The situation that the actual mileage of the vehicle cannot be determined because the odometer in the vehicle has been modified without authorization.
- Battery damage as a result of storage, improper use of the vehicle, or the installation of electrical accessories not authorized by Lotus.
- Any damage to the hardware or software of the vehicle due to unauthorized access to vehicle data or software from any source; any loss or damage to personal information/data uploaded to the vehicle; viruses, bugs, malware or any other form of interference or cyber-attack.
- Vehicle damage due to fatigue driving or overload.
- Vehicle damage caused by the use of the vehicle as a power source.
- Normal wear, tear and deterioration (e.g., discolouration, fading, deformation, blurring, etc.) of components which are not deemed as defects of manufacturing or materials.
- Tyre damage due to driving on dangerous roads.

① Note!

- For accessories or high-quality parts with a separately agreed warranty, the agreed warranty period shall prevail.
- If the high voltage battery needs to be maintained due to a problem, the Lotus retailer will evaluate and determine the

- maintenance method (repair, replace or provide refurbished parts).
- The power consumption of the key fob battery varies according to the usage scenario. If the key is kept near the vehicle, it will be in the high power consumption state for a long time. Try to avoid placing the key near the vehicle for a long time. If the power level of the key fob is low, there will be a prompt in the combined instrument to remind you to replace the battery in time.

Description of warranty period

Within the warranty period, if the parts are subject to quality problems under the normal use of the vehicle due to defects in the design, manufacture or raw materials, Lotus will provide warranty service for the aforementioned parts. These repairs will be free of charge for the customer if they are carried out by the Lotus retailer.

Change of ownership

The limited vehicle warranty provided in this manual is not affected by the transfer of vehicle ownership, but the remaining limited warranty period of the vehicle shall still be calculated from the date of the purchase invoice (the date of first invoicing) held by the first owner of the vehicle.

Record of ownership change

Change log 1		
Address of current user	Address of original user	
ID number	ID number	
Postal code	Postal code	
Phone of current user	Phone of original user	
Email address	Email address	
Mobile phone number	Mobile phone number	
VIN	Drive motor number	
Model	Date of registration	
Mileage at the time of ownership change	Date of change	

	Change log 1
License plate number	
Stamp	

Change log 2	
Address of current user	Address of original user
ID number	ID number
Postal code	Postal code
Phone of current user	Phone of original user
Email address	Email address
Mobile phone number	Mobile phone number
VIN	Drive motor number
Model	Date of registration

Change log 2		
Mileage at the time of ownership change	Date of change	
License plate number		
Stamp		

Change log 3	
Address of current user	Address of original user
ID number	ID number
Postal code	Postal code
Phone of current user	Phone of original user
Email address	Email address
Mobile phone number	Mobile phone number

Change log 3		
VIN	Drive motor number	
Model	Date of registration	
Mileage at the time of ownership change	Date of change	
License plate number		
Stamp		

Change log 4	
Address of current user	Address of original user
ID number	ID number
Postal code	Postal code
Phone of current user	Phone of original user

Change log 4	
Email address	Email address
Mobile phone number	Mobile phone number
VIN	Drive motor number
Model	Date of registration
Mileage at the time of ownership change	Date of change
License plate number	
Stamp	

Service record

1st maintenance (2 years or 30,000 km)	
VIN	

1st maintenance (2 years or 30,000 km)	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

2nd maintenance (4 years or 60,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	

2nd maintenance	(4 years or 60,000 km)	
Signature (seal)		

3rd maintenance (6 years or 90,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

4th maintenance (8 years or 120,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	

4th maintenance (8 years or 120,000 km)		
Date		
Description		
Next maintenance date		
Next maintenance mileage		
Signature (seal)		

5th maintenance (10 years or 150,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

6th maintenance (12 years or 180,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

7th maintenance (14 years or 210,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	

7th maintenance (14 years or 210,000 km)	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

8th maintenance (16 years or 240,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	_
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

9th maintenance (18 years or	(18 years or 270,000 km)	
VIN		
Job card number		

9th maintenance (18 years or 270,000 km)	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

10th maintenance (20 years or 300,000 km)	
VIN	
Job card number	
Mileage	
Date	
Description	
Next maintenance date	
Next maintenance mileage	
Signature (seal)	

Note: the above deadlines are whichever comes first.

Storage and maintenance

In order to maintain the good performance of the vehicle, please avoid exposing the vehicle to too high or too low temperature environment for a long time. When the ambient temperature of the vehicle storage is too low, the distance to empty will be reduced and the charging time will increase.

It is better to avoid the SOC of high voltage battery to drop below 20%. If a low battery reminder appears, please charge the battery in time. Depletion of high voltage battery will lead to a decrease in its performance.

When the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, do not let the high voltage battery run out. Even if the vehicle is not running, the high voltage battery will continue to slowly discharge to supply power to the on-board electronic equipment. In this case, please ensure that the power of the high voltage battery is sufficient. Please maintain the high voltage battery at least once every 3 months as follows:

- Use slow charging to fill the battery once.
- Keeping the vehicle with 50% to 70% charge remaining when parked.

If you are intended to start a vehicle that has been parked for more than 3 months, ensure to check whether any warning light or warning message related to the high voltage battery appears on the instrument cluster before doing so. In case of any questions, please contact the authorized Lotus dealer.

① Note!

- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, be sure to check and maintain it regularly.
- For safety reasons, the available power of high voltage batteries that are beyond their designed service life will be gradually limited.

Battery



Battery

The battery is located under the boot of the vehicle.

The service life and function of the battery are affected by many factors, such as the times of starts, driving style, driving conditions, climatic conditions, etc:

- If the battery is completely discharged multiple times, its service life may be shortened. Keeping the battery charged enough helps extend its lifespan.
- The starting capacity of the battery will be weakened over time.
 If the vehicle is parked for a long time, the battery may need to be recharged.

⚠ Warning!

- Battery electrolyte is corrosive, and if it gets into the eyes or skin, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical care.
- The maintenance and care of the battery should be handled by professionally trained personnel.
- It is prohibited to touch the positive and negative poles of the battery with both hands simultaneously and to touch the positive and negative poles with a conductor at any time.
- In case of battery fire, the personnel must leave the vehicle quickly. If you accidentally inhale smoke, please transfer and get medical attention as soon as possible.

□ Caution!

If you notice the following, be sure to stop using the vehicle and cut off the power immediately. You can also contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for further guidance:

- Power cords, plugs, or communication lines are cracked or damaged;
- Signs of overheating, fumes, and sparks;
- Battery pack damage (e.g. cracking), battery leakage.

Safety warnings for battery handing



The battery voltage is dangerous.



It is forbidden to connect positive and negative terminals.



The battery contains a highly corrosive toxic acid.



The battery may release flammable gases, so open flames or other sources of ignition are prohibited near the battery.



The battery shall be kept out of reach of children.



When any operator is working near or handling batteries, always wear appropriate eye protection appliances to prevent splashing battery electrolyte from getting into the eyes.



The battery after use cannot be discarded at will, which is harmful to the environment, so it must be recycled in an environmentally friendly and safe way.



Recycle the battery in the right way.

Tyre information

Tyre wear

To reduce tyre wear and extend tyre life, please have your tyres serviced according to your driving habits and road conditions:

- For new tyres, the first 500 km of driving is the running-in period, during which the tyres should be run-in by careful driving at a proper speed, so as to prolong the service life of the tyres.
- Fast driving in corners, too fast acceleration and emergency braking will all increase tyre wear.

- Avoid sudden acceleration or emergency braking.
- When driving over curbs, potholes, gravel roads, or similar roads, please avoid passing in a timely manner. If you cannot avoid passing, please maintain a low speed and do not directly press over the curbs.

Tyre economy:

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid sudden braking as much as possible.
- Tyre wear accelerates with increased speed.
- Maintain proper wheel alignment.
- Avoid tyre damage caused by corrosive liquid contamination of the tyres.
- Wheel imbalance can lead to poor tyre economy and ride comfort
- Tyres must rotate in the same direction throughout their entire service life

The damage to tyres and rims is not easily noticeable. If the vehicle experiences abnormalities during running (such as tyre pressure warning, vibration, deviation, etc.), please immediately slow down and park the vehicle in a safe place to check if the tyres/rims are damaged. If the damage cannot be identified from the appearance, please contact or request assistance from Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

- If the tyre wear is uneven, it is recommended that you go to Lotus retailer for four-wheel alignment and dynamic balance detection.
- If damage is found to the tyre, even if it is not deflated, it should be immediately stopped from use. When the wheel rim is deformed, cracked, or severely corroded, it should also be immediately stopped from use. Be sure to keep the tyres/rims in a safe state when driving the vehicle.
- Do not drive your car if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn, or inflated to an incorrect pressure. Please always to use the correct size tyres. Refer to rim and tyre specifications.
- If tyres other than those specified are used, ensure that the load and speed ratings marked on the tyre.

Seasonal tyre

In the temperature below 7°C environment, the performance of the summer tyres will be reduced, in this case, Lotus Cars recommended that the vehicle replace the winter tyres.

Winter tyres can improve the traction in icy conditions. When you install winter tyres, be sure to install the correct winter tyres. If you have any questions, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for relevant advice on winter tyres.

When driving a car with winter tyres fitted, you may experience increased tyre noise, reduced tread life and reduced traction on dry roads.

⚠ Warning!

In low temperature or snow and ice road conditions, summer tyres provide insufficient traction, and summer tyres are easy to crack and damage under the influence of low temperature.

Caution!

- The use of winter tyres should conform to local regulations.
- If the tread depth of a winter tyre is less than 4 mm, it must be replaced.
- If the tread depth of a summer tyre is less than 1.6mm, it must be replaced to advid accidents.

Tyre chains

Be sure to install chains on vehicle tyres before travelling on snow or icy roads in winter. The tyre chain can increase the friction with the road, thereby reducing the risk of side-slip.

For installation of the anti-skid chain, please refer to the anti-skid chain manufacturer's instructions for use. When using tyre chains, pay attention to the following:

• The use of tyre chain should conform to local regulations.

- When driving with tyre chains, the vehicle speed must not exceed 50 km/h.
- The chains can be installed on driving wheels. Use the corresponding tyre chains according to the recommended specifications.
- Tyre chains may not be available for some sized wheels. Please contact Lotus Customer Care Centre for specific information.
- When driving a vehicle with tyre chains, you may feel that the maneuverability is affected.
- When driving a vehicle with tyre chains, avoid sharp turns or locked wheels.
- When driving to snow-free sections, remove the tyre chains to avoid damage to the tyres or excessive wear of the tyre chains.

Tyre specifications	Recommended anti-skid chain models
Front: 275/40 R22	RUD comfort CENTRAXV902/K- SUMMIT XXL K77
Rear: 315/35 R22	RUD comfort CENTRAXV902/K- SUMMIT XXL K77

Caution!

- After the anti-skid chain is installed, the air suspension adjustment of the body height is not allowed to be lower than the STANDARD.
- Do not install snow chains on summer tyres.
- Do not install anti-skid chains by deflating the tyres.
- If you hear unusual noises from tyre chains during driving, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.

Checking under the hood of the front compartment

Coolant

The cooling system of the vehicle has been filled with coolant at delivery. When the fluid level in the coolant fluid reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the instrument cluster will issue a notification. If an alarm is noticed during driving, pull over on the premise of ensuring safety and do not continue driving, please also contact the Lotus retailer immediately.

When the vehicle is driven go to the Lotus retailer for maintenance at the specified interval, the technicians of the Lotus retailer will check the coolant and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient coolant



Check the coolant level from time to time to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the coolant level is lower than the recommended level, stop driving as soon as safety allows and contact the Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

Do not open the coolant reservoir lid at high temperatures in the bonnet to avoid personal injury caused by coolant splashing under excessive air pressure in the reservoir when the lid is being opened.

Caution!

If you find that the coolant is insufficient, it should be added by professional staff. Never add the coolant by yourself.

① Note!

Please treat the used coolant in accordance with applicable environmental protection laws.

Brake fluid

⚠ Warning!

- When the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is lower than the recommended level, the instrument cluster will display a corresponding prompt. If you receive corresponding prompt while driving, park your vehicle in a safe area, and contact Lotus retailer immediately.
- If you notice the brake pedal becoming loose or significant loss of brake fluid, contact Lotus retailer immediately. Driving in these situations may result in an extended braking distance or complete braking failure.

When the vehicle is driven to the Lotus retailer for maintenance at the specified interval, the technicians of the Lotus retailer will check the brake fluid and add in case of shortage.

Insufficient brake fluid



Check the brake fluid level from time to time to ensure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks.

If the brake fluid level is lower than the recommended level, stop driving as soon as safety allows and contact the Lotus retailer.

⚠ Warning!

Brake fluid is highly toxic. Containers should be kept tightly sealed and out of reach of children. The brake fluid comes into contact with skin or eyes, wash immediately with plenty of water and go to the doctor right away.

Caution!

- Brake fluid can damage the paint surface. The spill can be immediately absorbed with an absorbent cloth and the affected area must be cleaned with a car cleaner product mixed with water.
- If the brake fluid is found to be insufficient, it should be added by a professional staff, and the brake fluid should not be added by yourself.

Windscreen washer fluid

Regularly check the windscreen washer fluid. When the fluid in the reservoir is less than 1.0 L, a text message will appear on the combination instrument, reminding you to refill the washer fluid in time.

Operate the washer regularly and check whether the nozzle is clogged and can spray properly.

Filling windshield washer fluid



- Clean the reservoir cap to prevent dust from entering the reservoir.
- 2. Open the reservoir cap.
- 3. Add washer fluid until the fluid level is below the filling port.

Caution!

When the outdoor temperature is lower than 4° C, please empty the washing liquid in the liquid storage tank in time, replace the antifreeze washing liquid that meets the current temperature, avoid the freezing of the washing liquid affecting the cleaning function, and prevent the freezing of the washing liquid from damaging the liquid storage tank.

Pollen filter

The pollen filter is used to filter exterior air containing dust, pollen and certain odours. In case of very strong external odours, they may not be completely removed by the pollen filter from the air that will be introduced into the A/C system.

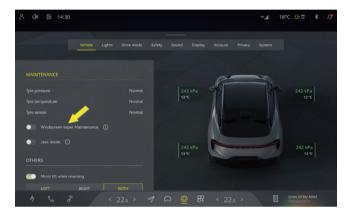
Regular replacement of pollen filter is part of maintenance. When you drive your car to the Lotus retailer for scheduled maintenance, the staff of Lotus retailer will check or replace the pollen filter according to the maintenance interval and the actual situation.

① Note!

When driving frequently in dusty conditions, you should clean the pollen filter more frequently and replace it if necessary.

Inspection and replacement of wiper blade strip

Replacement of wiper blade strip



Before replacing the front wiper blade strip, please click on the **Setting** - **Vehicle** - **Windscreen Maintenance** in the centre display, and the front wiper arm will be moved to the service position.



Wiper blade strip cover

Please operate as follows when replacing the wiper blade strip:

- After the front wiper arm enters the maintenance mode, the wiper arm will rest on the windscreen. At this time, you can lift the wiper arm and adjust the wiper blade to a certain angle until a "click" is heard.
- 2. Remove the wiper blade strip cover as indicated by the arrow and pull out the wiper blade strip.
- 3. Install the new wiper blade strip into the wiper blade.
- After replacing the wiper blade strip, lower the wiper arms, operate the wiper lever or deactivate the Windscreen Maintenance on CSD, then the wipers will return to the bottom position.

Caution!

- Before activating Windscreen Maintenance, make sure the wiper blade strips are not frozen on the windscreen.
- After the wiper blade strips is replaced, ensure that the wiper arm is slowly restored to its original position to avoid damaging the windscreen due to excessive return force of the wiper arm.

Maintenance of wiper blade strip

The contaminants on windscreen or wiper blade may reduce the effectiveness of the wiper blade strip. The contaminants include ice, vehicle wax, cleaning fluids containing bacteria or waterproof agent, bird droppings, tree sap, and other organic materials.

Regularly clean the edge of the wiper blade strip and check for cracks, rips and roughness in the rubber. If damaged, please contact Lotus retailer for replacement.

Caution!

The surface of the wiper blade strip is applied with a layer of graphite, which ensures smooth wiping and eliminates wiping noise. Solvent-based cleaning agent, hard sponges and sharp edge tools can damage the graphite layer. If the graphite layer is damaged, the wiping noise of wiper will increase. In this case, you should replace the wiper in time. In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blade strips are frozen on the windscreen before using the wipers. If de-icing is not conducted in advance, the wiper blade strip and wiper motor may be damaged.

① Note!

To ensure the cleaning effect, you are recommended to use cleaning products that have been certified by appropriate authorities and approved for use on automotive windscreen and rubber.

Exterior maintenance

Washing vehicle frequently helps maintain the vehicle in good surface. Washing should be carried out in a cool place. If the vehicle has been exposed to the sun for a long time, we recommend you wait for the vehicle body surface to cool down before washing.

When washing will be done through an automatic car washer, be sure to follow the instructions of the washer operator.

When washing the vehicle under high pressure, please direct the water flow at the window instead of the edge of the window so as to prevent water from injecting the inside of the vehicle.

In northern regions in winter, each time after the car is washed, you should wipe water from the gap near the door handle so as to

avoid freezing which may hinder the door handle from unfolding electrically.

To prevent damage to vehicle paint, you should remove corrosive substances (bird droppings, resin, insects, asphalt spots, road salt, industrial dust, etc.) in time before vehicle washing.

The washing of the exterior of the vehicle body should be implemented as follows:

- Preparation for cleaning: close the bonnet, doors windows and tailgate, and check whether the charging port is completely closed.
- Thorough rinsing: rinse off dirt and grit from the vehicle body with a hose before washing. Rinse areas that can easily accumulate dust, mud or road salt, for example, vehicle mudguard.
- Hand wash: add a high-quality neutral vehicle cleaner in cold or warm water, dip the soft cloth wet, and hand wash the outside of the vehicle body.
- Rinsing with clean water: after washing, rinse with clean water to prevent any residual soap liquid on the surface from getting dry.
- Wiping with soft cloth: wipe water from the surface of the vehicle with soft absorbent cloth.

⚠ Warning!

Do not wash the inside of the bonnet with water, otherwise an electrical fault may occur and cause a serious accident.

Caution!

- Do not wash the vehicle with acid-based cleaner. Acids can damage vehicle surface and affect vehicle surface.
- Do not use strong alkaline soap, strong chemical cleaning agents (such as strong alkaline cleaning agents, tap water, selfcleaning agents), gasoline or solvents to clean the vehicle, as this may affect the appearance of the vehicle.
- Do not use acidic, alkaline and other chemical cleaning agents, petrol or other organic solvents to clean tyres and rims, as this may damage the tyre and wheel surface.
- In regions where the roads are applied with a layer of salt in winter, the underbody should be cleaned regularly to prevent salt build-up which may accelerate corrosion of the underbody and the suspension.
- Remember to close all windows before washing the outside of the vehicle.
- After washing, wipe the surface of the vehicle clean, otherwise the residual cleaner may corrode the surface of the vehicle.
- Do not use lint or coarse cloth, such as vehicle washing gloves.

Automatic washing

Automatic washer is convenient and efficient, but it cannot wash the vehicle thoroughly. To get the more washing effect, we recommend you wash the vehicle manually.

L Caution!

When using automatic washer:

- Make sure the outside mirrors are folded, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- The vehicle should be able to move freely and the automatic parking function must be disabled.
- Disable the automatic wiper function and ensure that the hidden door handles are retracted, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

High-pressure washing

When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, please follow the operating instructions for the equipment, especially the working pressure and spray distance. The nozzle should not get too close to soft materials such as rubber hoses or seals.

⚠ Warning!

If you need to use the vehicle immediately after washing, please lightly press the brake pedal multiple times while driving to remove moisture from the brake pads. Moisture may affect the braking efficiency.

Caution!

- Do not wash the sensors with high-pressure washer or steam washer, otherwise they may be damaged. Wash all sensor surfaces with a small flow of water for a short time and keep a distance of at least 10 cm from it during washing.
- Before washing the vehicle, check that all closures of the vehicle are properly closed.
- In cold winter, it is recommended that the single high-pressure flushing time of the opposite radar box is less than 2 minutes. Do not flush directly against the gap of the cover plate of the side radar box to avoid excessive water inside the radar box, which may cause the internal mechanism to freeze, resulting in the lidar unable to reach out.
- The vehicle should be washed in strict accordance with the operating instructions for high-pressure washer, with particular attention paid to the working pressure and the spray distance. If a pressure washer is used, make sure the nozzle is at least 30 cm away from the surface of the vehicle body. Keep moving the nozzle frequently other than spraying water to one area continuously, otherwise high-pressure water flow may go into

vehicle parts and cause gradual damage. Do not direct the nozzle at the charging port and spray water to the port.

Polishing and waxing

High-quality wax can protect vehicle paint against environmental damages and even minor scratches. In case that the water droplets can no longer smoothly fall from the painted surface of clean vehicle body, you should immediately apply a layer of high-quality hard wax as curing agent on the paint of the vehicle. If you use curing agent regularly, it is recommended to apply a layer of hard wax at least twice a year to protect the vehicle body paint.

Polishing is only required when the vehicle body paint does not show any lustre and waxing can no longer ensure glossy paint. Parts applied with matte paint or plastic parts should not be polished.

Washing of windows and mirrors

- The windows and mirrors should be cleaned with alcohol-based glass cleaner. After cleaning, the liquid on the surface of the glass should be dried with clean, soft, lint-free cloth or chamois cloth.
- After the vehicle body surface is maintained, remove residual wax from the glass with special cleaner and cleaning cloth to prevent the wiper blade from being scratched.
- Remove snow from windows and mirrors with a small brush.

The accumulated ice can be removed by deicer spray or deicing shovel. However, you must be specially cautious to avoid damaging the parts, and the ice must be scraped in the same direction.

□ Caution!

- It is forbidden to use hot water with excessive temperature to remove ice and snow from the windshield and rearview mirror. Otherwise, the glass may burst.
- Residual rubber, grease and silicone substances on the glass must be removed with special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

Maintenance of sealing strip

Remove dust and dirt from the surface of the sealing strip using soft cloth during maintenance. Regularly apply special protective agent to the surface of the sealing strip.

Interior maintenance

Use Lotus-recommended cleaners and vehicle maintenance products as much as possible. Regularly clean the vehicle inside with a vacuum cleaner.

Caution!

- Some coloured clothes (such as dark jeans, sheepskin or Alcantara clothing) or cosmetics may stain the interior fabrics. If the interior fabrics are stained, clean and take measures to protect the affected areas as soon as possible.
- Do not use washing fluid, gasoline or liquor, and other strong solvents to clean the interiors of the vehicle, as this may damage the interior fabrics and other interior materials.
- Do not spray cleaners directly on parts with electrical buttons and controls.
- During cleaning, do not use sharp objects to avoid damaging the interior materials.

Maintenance and cleaning of leather interiors

Leather is a natural fabric that will change and develop exquisite lustre as time goes on. To keep the performance, colour and lustre of the leather, you should regularly clean and maintain the leather materials. Otherwise the dirt and grease may gradually destroy the protective layer of the leather.

When you maintain the leather materials in the car, please use the leather special care products recommended by Lotus for cleaning/maintenance.

① Note!

- Clean the dirt on the surface of light colored leather as soon as possible;
- Dry as soon as possible when water drips on the leather surface;
- A little dirt or dust can be gently wiped with a thoroughly wrung white cloth (soaked with pure water), and then open the window to let it dry naturally or dry it gently with a dry rag. Do not expose to high temperature or dry it with an electric hair dryer;
- When maintaining the leather materials in the car, avoid contacting solvents (such as butanone, acetone, liquor, methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.), detergents (such as washing powder, detergent, detergent, etc.), disinfectants, gasoline and other reagents, which may cause discoloration or damage to the leather surface.

Maintenance and cleaning of Alcantara interiors

Alcantara material is highly practical and has the characteristics of soft texture and full colour. In addition, they have strong ability to protect against contamination, and are easy to care.

In order to maintain the appearance of this material, please use Alcantara special care products recommended by Lotus for cleaning/curing.

If no special detergents are available when you are cleaning Alcantara products, you can follow the following instructions:

- Use a soft brush, dry cloth or vacuum cleaner to clean the surface.
- Wipe the surface of Alcantara gently with a thoroughly wrung white cloth or sponge (soaked with purified water), and then open the window to let it dry naturally. After drying, use a soft bristle brush to gently comb the down to restore the fabric to its original state.

L Caution!

- In case of local stains, they shall be treated immediately to avoid the spread or deposition of stains and friction, so as to prevent the spread or penetration of stains into materials.
- Do not use steam equipment during cleaning.

Maintenance and cleaning of seat belt

Pull out the seat belt and wipe it. Do not use any type of cleaner or chemical cleaner. After cleaning, let it dry naturally.

⚠ Warning!

Do not use bleach, dyes or chemical solvents to clean seat belts. These materials can seriously impair the fabric performance of seat belts.

Maintenance and cleaning of floor mats

To prolong the service life of the carpet on the vehicle and make it easier to clean, you should clean the floor mats regularly and install them properly. If the floor mats are excessively worn, replace them in time.

⚠ Warning!

Arrange the floor mats, carpets and other items reasonably to avoid hindering the movement of the pedals.

Maintenance and cleaning of CSD

The dust, dirt and grease on your fingers can affect the performance and clarity of the CSD. Clean the display frequently with microfibre cloth.

! Caution!

- Keep the CSD away from liquids and moisture. Otherwise, the display and electrical components may be affected or damaged.
- During cleaning, do not press with great force or use abrasive materials, as this may cause damage.

Precautions during the run-in period

In order to ensure your new car have the optimal performance and stability, Lotus recommends you to pay attention to the running-in of the new car at the initial period of use (i.e. 1,000 km). During this period, you need to do daily inspections to identify and eliminate problems in advance, so as to improve the running-in quality of your new car:

- Before driving, make sure that the tyre pressure is within the standard range, and the coolant and brake fluid are sufficient. If there are relevant prompts or warnings on the instrument cluster, please deal with them in time.
- If you notice any unusual noises while driving, you should stop the car for inspection, and contact Lotus retailer for the problem that you cannot solve by yourself.
- Please avoid driving at a low speed or high speed for a long time when the car is fully loaded.
- The car should be driven at a constant speed as far as possible and avoid emergency braking as much as possible.
- When the specified driving mileage or the specified maintenance interval has been reached, please visit the Lotus retailer in time to have your car serviced accordingly.

Brake running-in

In the initial stage of a new car, the brake pads are not in optimum condition and cannot achieve the best braking effect, so running-in is required.

During the first 500 km of a new car, you should keep your car at a higher than usual safe distance from the cars ahead while driving and avoid emergency braking as much as possible.

EMERGENCY ELETRE



Guidance for traffic accidents

When the car is involved in a traffic accident, follow the steps below:

- Park the car (if it can still be driven normally after the accident)
 in a safe place and turn on the hazard warning lights. If the car
 needs towing, please contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre.
- 2. Take out the reflective vest from the glove box and put it on.
- 3. Take the warning triangle from the boot load storage box.
- 4. Place the warning triangle behind the car.

⚠ Warning!

- In the event of an emergency traffic accident, personal injury or major fire, please contact for rescue as soon as possible.
- In the event of a car fire, passengers should exit the car swiftly, call emergency services, and let them know that the car is electric with high-voltage components.

Emergency call



Emergency call system is divided into E-Call and Lotus SOS:

- E-Call is always available in applicable countries.
- Lotus SOS is part of the Lotus customized services and is activated as a default function during a certain period. Lotus SOS offers enhanced and additional support and services such as communication between the occupant and trained call center staff in the local language.



SOS button cover

When you have an emergency and need urgent assistance, you can follow these steps:

- Press and turn on the SOS button cover on the front reading lamp.
- 2. Press and hold the SOS button inside the cover to obtain emergency call.

The different colors of the LED indicator on the SOS button indicate the current status of emergency call system:

- Green LED on indicates: TCAM Modem on and no call service active.
- Green LED flashing indicates: Call service active /call ongoing/ incoming call ringing.

- Red LED on indicates: Call exception/ unavailable/ DTC fault.
- LED OFF indicates: emergency call system standby/sleep/off.

⚠ Warning!

When the LED indicator on the SOS button is red, drive immediately to the Lotus retailer for service.

When the SOS button is pressed, an emergency call interface will appear on CSD.

When any of the vehicle's airbags or seat belt pretensioners are activated, the road rescue system automatically activates and sends a signal to the Lotus Customer Care Centre. The Lotus Customer Care Centre will provide appropriate assistance (ambulance, police, etc.).

When the emergency call is made successfully, the relevant service personnel of the emergency call centre will ask for your consent to record the conversation and sound in your vehicle, and some of the information of the vehicle (such as VIN) will be transmitted to the emergency call centre together with the vehicle location information.

⚠ Warning!

It is important to leave the vehicle immediately after an emergency call is made in the following cases:

- After an accident.
- The vehicle cannot be driven and in a hazardous area on the road.
- When the vehicle is not clearly visible to drivers in other lanes due to low light or low visibility.

⚠ Warning!

- If there is a dangerous situation, do not stay in the car to use the SOS calling.
- When the LED indicator on the SOS button is red, drive immediately to your Lotus retailer for service.
- In the event of a serious collision (e.g. airbag deployment), the E-call function will be automatically activated. If only a minor collision occurs, the function may not be activated automatically.
- In the event of an accident that causes a power outage in your vehicle, the E-call may fail to function properly, and at this time you should get help by other means.

① Note!

 The SOS button should only be used in an emergency, such as an accident, illness or a threat to the driver or passenger. Misuse of this button may incur additional charges.

- When you trigger an emergency rescue call by mistake, you can cancel the call by pressing the SOS button again for a short period of time.
- When there is an owner transfer and the car is sold and used in another country, please visit the local Lotus retailer to set up the proper Lotus SOS service in order for the new owner to receive the support accordingly.
- The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.
- After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle, the system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

Hazard warning device

Hazard warning lights



Hazard warning light button

In the case of an emergency while driving, you should immediately press the hazard warning lamp to alert the vehicle behind, thereby avoiding accidents.

① Note!

The hazard warning lamp may also be illuminated in case of a collision or sudden braking.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is stored in the boot load storage box. In case of emergency, switch on the hazard warning lights and if necessary, set up a warning triangle at a sufficient distance to the rear of vehicle. Comply with any local legislation required.

Reflective vests

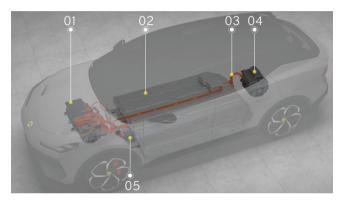


Reflective vest

The reflective vest is stored in the glove box. If you make an emergency stop on the road, please be sure to wear a reflective vest when getting out of the car. Wearing a reflective vest increases visibility and reduces the risk of accidents.

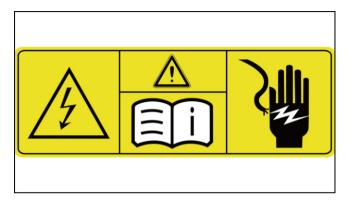
High voltage system information

Overview of HV system



- 1. Front drive motor
- 2. High voltage battery
- 3. HV wire harness
- 4. Rear drive motor
- 5. Integrated charging port

Safety sign information



HV components are attached with warning signs. Do not touch, disassemble or replace such components.



Warning signs of HV connectors.

⚠ Warning!

It is forbidden to touch, disassemble or replace parts and components with HV warning signs, orange cables and their connectors on vehicles without permission, so as to avoid personal injuries or casualties.

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
B A T T E R Y - M AI N	12 V - 4 0 A h	12 .8 V	Li th iu m - io n ba tt er y	C A M E L G R O U P C O. , L T D.	6 5 N or th H an jia n g R oa d, Fa nc he n g Di st ri t, Xi an	CE

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
					gy an gCi ty, H u be i Pr ovin ce C a mel C or p or at ion	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
12 V S U P E R C A P A CI T O R	M 3 4 W -0 12 -0 0 4	12 V	H yb ri d ul tr a ca pa ci to r ba tt er y	G M C C E L E C T R O NI C T E C H N O L O G Y W	51 8- 7,51 8- 9 Z h o n g h ui R oa d, H ui sh an Ec o n o	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
				U XI C O. ,L T D	mi c D ev el o p m en t Z o ne "W ux i Ci ty "Ji an gs u Pr ov	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
					in ce	
F O B	P an as o ni c C R 2 0 3 2	3 V	C oi n Pr im ar y lit hi u m ba tt er y	P an as o ni c E ne rg y C o., Lt d.	1- 1 M at su sh it a- ch o, M or ig uc hi Ci ty , O sa ka	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
					5 7 0- 8 51 1, Ja pa n	
T P M S	M A X E L L C R 2 0 3 2 H R	3 V	C oi n ty pe lit hi u m m an ga ne se	M ax ell , Lt d.	Ta ku mi da i 5, O n o- sh i, H yo g	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
	H A O S- T 41		di ox id e ba tt er		o, 67 5- 13 2 2 Ja pa n	
T C A M	F D K 3 H R-A A U T E W - N	3. 6 V	Ni ck el - M et al hy dr id e ba tt	F D K C O R P O R A TI O N	S hi ba ur a Cr ys ta I S hi na ga w	

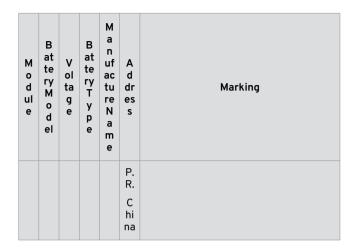
M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
	S C- 4		er y		a, 1- 6-41 K o na n, Mi na to - ku , T ok yo 10 8-8 21 2 Ja	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A d dr es s	Marking
					pa n	
B B S	F D K C R1 7 3 3 5 E G-Z Z 6	3 V	Pr im ar y lit hi u m ba tt er y	F D K C O R P O R A TI O N	S hi ba ur a Cr ys ta I S hi na ga w a, 1-6-41 K o na	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
					n, Mi na to ku , Tok yo 10 8- 8 21 2 Ja pa n	
E V B at	C T P 8	7 0 8 V	Li th iu m	C o nt e	N o. 2	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
te ry	0 01 16 6		io n ba tt er y	m p or ar y A m pe re x T ec h n ol o gy C o., Li mi te d	Xi n ga n g R oa d, Z ha n g w an T o w n, Ji ao C he n g	

M o d ul e	B at te ry M o d el	V ol ta g e	B at te ry T y p e	M a n uf ac tu re N a m e	A dr es s	Marking
					Di st ri ct, Ni n g de Ci ty , F uji an Pr ov in ce , 3 5 21 0 0,	



Vehicle lifting

⚠ Warning!

The vehicle must be fixed or lifted at the specified lifting points, as the high voltage battery pack is installed at the bottom of this vehicle. Failure to do so may cause damage to the battery pack, resulting in accidents.

The vehicle lifting steps are as follows:

 Before lifting, tap the @ icon on CSD to select Vehicle and turn on the Jack mode (jack mode allows the vehicle to be jacked without damaging the suspension).



2. Make sure all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet are closed, and place the lift arm contact pad at the specified lifting points.



- Adjust the height and position of lift arm contact pad and place it properly.
- Raise the lift, and make sure the lift arm contact pad is kept at a proper position.

⚠ Warning!

- The lifting of the vehicle should be performed by qualified persons.
- Never lift the vehicle when it is charging or connected with a charging cable.
- Before lifting the vehicle, make sure the lift arm contact pad is placed at specified lifting point so as to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury during vehicle lifting.

Caution!

- Since this vehicle is equipped with air suspension, be sure to switch to jack mode before lifting to avoid damages to the vehicle.
- The vehicle must be lifted at the specified lifting point by using the jack. Otherwise damages to the vehicle may be caused.

Jump starting

When the vehicle doors cannot be unlocked due to weak battery, you can refer to the **Emergency door unlocking from outside** related content in (p.69) to help you unlock the door in emergency, so as to complete the jump starting.

Caution!

- Do not use batteries with voltages greater than 12 V for jump starting.
- Be sure to link the jumper cable carefully to avoid short circuits due to contact with other components.
- At jump starting, the two vehicles must not come into contact with each other, otherwise, once the positive terminals of the batteries of the two vehicles are connected, the current may begin to flow immediately, causing damages to vehicles.

- When jump starting, be sure to connect the positive terminal first, and then the negative terminal.
- Unable to jump start for lead-acid batteries.
- If you encounter any problems during jump starting, contact Lotus Customer Care Centre in time.

① Note!

The vehicle shall be started for at least 20 minutes to ensure that the battery is charged to the working voltage.

Jump-starting car in bonnet

In case that a car cannot be started normally due to weak battery, you can start the car by connecting a jumper cable in the bonnet fuse box to the battery of another car.



- Park the vehicle in a safe area, and open the fuse box cover in the bonnet of the vehicle with dead battery.
- 2. Connect one end of the red cable to the fuse box terminal of the car with dead battery.
- 3. Connect the other end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal of the battery in booster car.
- 4. Connect one end of the black cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery in booster car.
- 5. Connect the other end of the black cable to any metal body part in the bonnet of the car with dead battery.
- After the jumper cable is connected, start the booster car, and a few minutes later, start the car with dead battery. Check whether the car with dead battery can start normally.

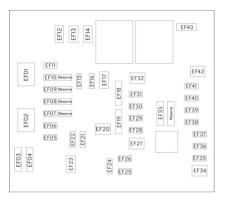
7. After the car with dead battery starts normally, disconnect the power supply of booster car, remove the jumper cables in reverse order of the connection.

Replace fuse

Bonnet fuse box



Open the bonnet to identify the cabin fuse box.



Fuse information								
No.	Function	Ampere (A)						
EF01	Cooling fan (ALPHA)	40						
EF02	Cooling fan (LAMBDA)	60						
EF03-A	Body area controller	10						
EF03-A	Electronic gear shifter assembly	10						
EF03-A	Redundant brake controller	10						
EF03-A	Vehicle controller	10						

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF03-A	Electric power steering	10
EF03-A	Brake controller	10
EF03-B	48V supercapacitor	10
EF03-B	Medium voltage converter module	10
EF03-B	Rear steering module	10
EF03-B	12V low-voltage lithium battery	10
EF03-B	12V supercapacitor	10
EF04 -A	ETC electronic unit	10
EF04 -B	Accelerator pedal sensor	10
EF05	Airbag controller	10
EF06	Reserve	20
EF07	Reserve	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF08	Reserve	20
EF09	Autopilot assist domain controller	10
EF09	Outlet media rearview mirror controller	10
EF10	Front active stabilizer bar assy	10
EF10	Rear active stabilizer bar assy	10
EF10	Rear electric drive system motor	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10
EF11	Active air dam module (ALPHA)	10
EF12	Reserve	40

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF13	Reserve	40
EF14	Reserve	40
EF15	Reserve	20
EF16	High voltage charging system assy	10
EF17	Washing pump	25
EF18-A	Spare battery sounding device	10
EF18-B	Electronic gear shifter assembly	10
EF18-B	Brake pedal sensor	10
EF19	Reserve	10
EF20	Brake controller	40
EF21	Right front combination headlight	15

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF22	Left front combination headlight	15
EF23	Brake controller	40
EF24	VCU Main Relay	10
EF25	Klaxon	20
EF26	CPSR control	10
EF27	Redundant brake controller	40
EF28	High voltage battery	10
EF29	Vehicle controller	15
EF30	Battery radiator water pump	20
EF31	Reserve	20
EF32	Cooling electronic water pump_210W	25
EF33-A	Front electric drive system motor	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF33-B	High voltage charging system assy (CN)	10
EF33-B	High voltage charging system assy (US/EU)	10
EF33-B	High voltage battery	10
EF34	Redundant brake controller	30
EF35	Vehicle controller	10
EF36	Vehicle controller	20
EF37	Vehicle controller	20
EF38	Front left radar	10
EF38	Front right radar	10
EF38	Forward looking millimeter-wave radar	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF39	Dc charging port cover controller for electric vehicle	10
EF39	Ac charging port cover controller for electric vehicle (LAMBDA)	10
EF39	Electric vehicle communication controller	10
EF40	Reserve	10
EF41	Vehicle controller	20
EF42	Reserve	25
EF43-A	Rear electric drive system motor	10
EF43-A	Front electric drive system motor	10
EF43-A	Motor loop coolant diverting valve	10

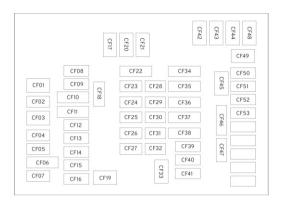
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF43-A	Three-way electronic valve for motor circuit	10
EF43-A	Air conditioning heater (high pressure PTC) assembly	10
EF43-A	Air conditioner control module (Air conditioner compressor)	10
EF43-A	Cold water switch off valve	10
EF43-A	Motor cooling regulating valve	10
EF43-B	Heating circuit pump	10
EF43-B	Condenser inlet solenoid on-off valve	10
EF43-B	Turn off valve actuator	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
EF43-B	OHX shutoff valve	10
EF43-B	Condenser electric expansion valve	10
EF43-B	Electric evaporator expansion valve	10

Central fuse box



The central fuse box is located on the right side of the tunnel console, which can be viewed by removing the right front bezel of the tunnel console.



Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF01	Wiper motor	30
CF02	Reserve	30
CF03	Reserve	30
CF04	Left monitor streaming media outside rearview mirror screen	10
CF05	AMG	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF06-A	Indoor lighting control module	10
CF06-A	Driver condition monitoring module	10
CF06-B	Left side visor makeup light	10
CF06-B	Right side visor makeup light	10
CF06-B	Interior rearview mirror module	10
CF06-B	Glove box light switch	10
CF06-B	Skylight dimming motor controller	10
CF07	Autopilot position unit	10
CF08	Anion generator	10
CF08	PM2.5 sensor	10
CF09	Combination switch	15

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF10	Reserve	10
CF11	Reserve	7.5
CF12	Reserve	15
CF13	Reserve	15
CF14	Rear USB	20
CF15	Luggage 12V power socket	20
CF16	Right streaming media outside rearview mirror screen	10
CF17	Body area controller	40
CF18	Driver side door module backup power supply	20
CF18	Bluetooth and NFC key communication module standby power supply	20

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF18	NFC card reader standby power supply	20
CF19	Reserve	30
CF20	Body area controller	40
CF21	Right restraint module	30
CF22	Reserve	10
CF23	Right rear seat	10
CF23	Left rear seat	10
CF23	Driver's seat	10
CF23	Passenger seat	10
CF24	Reserve	25
CF25	Reserve	10
CF26	Front active stabilizer bar assy	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF26	Rear active stabilizer bar assy	10
CF27	Heads-up display	10
CF28	Left front electric door module (ALPHA)	10
CF28	Right front electric door module (ALPHA)	10
CF28	Left front door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF28	Right front door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF29	Right front electric door module (ALPHA)	10
CF29	Right rear electric door module (ALPHA)	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF29	Right front door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF29	Right rear door anti-collision radar module (ALPHA)	10
CF30	Vehicle wireless terminal	10
CF31	Electronic steering lock	10
CF32	Passenger screen module	10
CF32	Sunlight rainfall sensor	10
CF32	DVR	10
CF33	Reserve	30
CF34-A	Outlet media rearview mirror controller	10
CF34-B	Diagnostic module	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF35-A	Radar module in front of car (presence detection of children)	10
CF35-A	Rear rear radar module (children presence detection)	10
CF35-A	ETC electronic unit	10
CF35-A	Alcohol lock	10
CF35-B	Carbon dioxide sensor	10
CF35-B	Combination switch	10
CF35-B	Internal motion sensor	10
CF36-A	In-car infotainment display	10
CF36-B	Driver information screen	10
CF36-B	Central control switch module	10

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF37-A	NFC card reader	10
CF37-A	Bluetooth and NFC key communication module	10
CF37-B	Vehicle gateway module	10
CF38	Air conditioning controller	10
CF39	WPC (15W)	10
CF40	In-car infotainment host	15
CF41	Front 12V power socket	20
CF42	Driver door module	30
CF43	Reserve	25
CF44	Passenger door module	30
CF45	Reserve	30

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
CF46-A	Atmosphere lamp	10
CF46-B	Overhead light module	10
CF47	WPC (50W)	15
CF49	Front blower	40
CF50	Reserve	10
CF51	Central display rotating module	10
CF51	Rear entertainment screen lifting module	10
CF52	Front USB power supply	15
CF53	Steering wheel adjusting module	15
CF54	Reserve	25
CF55	Reserve	25

Rear electric fuse box



Remove the boot storage box to find the rear electric fuse box.

RF01 RF02 RF03 RF04	
	[RF06]
	RF08 RF09 RF10 RF11 RF12 RF13 RF14 RF15 RF16 RF17 RF18
	RF19 RF20 RF21 RF22 RF23 RF24 RF25 RF26 RF27 RF28 RF29

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF01	Reserve	10
RF02	Reserve	10
RF03	Left rear taillight (LAMBDA)	10
RF04	Right rear taillight (LAMBDA)	10
RF05	Through-tail light (LAMBDA)	10
RF06	Reserve	10
RF07	Reserve	10
RF08	Air suspension control unit	50
RF09	Rear Seat Controller (5 seats)	30
RF10	Afterdefrosting	30
RF11	Electric tailgate module	30
RF12	Trailer module	30

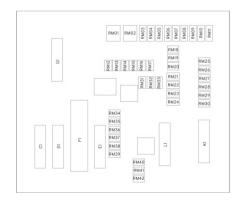
Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF13	Step monitoring module	10
RF14	Medium voltage converter module	10
RF14	48V supercapacitor	10
RF15	Rear electric drive system motor (IEM)	10
RF16	Rear entertainment module	10
RF16	High brake lamp (ALPHA)	10
RF17	Rear diffuser (ALPHA)	10
RF18	Reserve	10
RF19	Right rear seat control module	40
RF20	Rear Seat Controller (5 seats)	40

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RF20	Left rear seat control module	40
RF21	Suspension module control unit	30
RF22	Trailer module	40
RF23	Reserve	10
RF24	Active tail motor (AWM)	20
RF25	Rear tail light	15
RF26	Rear electric drive system motor	10
RF27	RR03/RR07 drive	10
RF28	Reserve	10
RF29	High voltage booster converter module	20

Rear main distribution fuse box



Remove the boot storage box to find the rear main distribution fuse box.



Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
C1	48V DCDC	125
D1	Rear-wheel steering	80
E1	Trunk safety box	150
F1	Cabin fuse box	250
G1	Instrument fuse box	200
K1	Cabin fuse box	125
L1	Reserve	125
RM01	Rear electric drive system motor (EDS2-Zues)	60
RM02	Reserve	60
RM03	Audio module	30
RM04	Audio module	30
RM05	Audio amplifier	30
RM06	Audio amplifier	30

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RM07	Left rear door module	30
RM08	Right rear door module	30
RM09	Driver's seat inner connection	30
RM10	Inside passenger seat connection	30
RM11	Rear electric drive system motor (EDS2-Zues)	30
RM12	Left side obstacle detection radar	10
RM12	Right side obstacle detection radar	10
RM12	Rear-looking millimeter wave radar	10
RM13	Reserve	15
RM14	Autopilot master domain controller	20

Fuse information		
No.	Function	Ampere (A)
RM15	Reserve	15
RM16	Reserve	15
RM17	Autopilot assist domain controller	20
RM18	Reserve	10
RM19	Autopilot assist domain controller	20
RM20	Autopilot assist domain controller	20
RM21	Reserve	30
RM22	Reserve	30
RM23	Reserve	40
RM24	Left restraint module	30
RM25	Reserve	10
RM26	Reserve	10
RM27	Reserve	15

Fuse information				
No.	Function	Ampere (A)		
RM28	Reserve	10		
RM29	Reserve	10		
RM30	Airbag controller	10		
RM31	Front Lidar box	10		
RM31	Rear Lidar box	10		
RM32	Left lidar box	10		
RM32	Right lidar box	10		
RM33	Reserve	10		
RM34	Left front combination headlight	20		
RM35	Right front combination headlight	20		
RM36	Left rear taillight (LAMBDA)	10		
RM37	Right rear taillight (LAMBDA)	10		

Fuse information				
No.	Function	Ampere (A)		
RM38	Reserve	10		
RM39	Left rear taillight 15 controller (ALPHA)			
RM40	Front lidar	10		
RM40	Left lidar	10		
RM41	Right lidar	10		
RM41	Rear lidar	10		
RM42	Reserve	10		

Driver's tools

The driver's tools are placed in the boot load storage box, which include:

- Wheel anti-theft bolt adapter
- Electric inflater pump
- Towing ring
- Tyre repair liquid tank

① Note!

After the driver's tools are used, please put them back to their original positions to avoid tool damage during emergency braking.

Quick temporary tyre repair

Tyre repair kit

The tyre repair kit can be used to temporarily seal punctures.

① Note!

Tyre repair kits only apply to tyres with a puncture in the tread area. Tyre repair kits cannot be used for sealing if defects such as large cracks, splits or other similar damages are found in tyres.

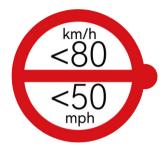


- 1. Electric inflater pump hose
- 2. Tyre repair liquid slot
- 3. Electric inflater pump power cable connector
- 4. Tyre repair liquid valve
- 5. Tyre repair liquid cover
- 6. Tyre repair liquid connecting hose
- 7. Bleed valve
- 8. Tyre pressure gauge
- 9. Electric inflater pump switch

Emergency tyre inflation

- Make sure the electric inflater pump switch is off, and then take out the electric inflater pump power cable connector and the electric inflater pump hose.
- 2. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the electric inflater pump hose to tyre valve.
- 3. Connect the electric inflater pump power cable connector with 12 V power supply of the car to energize the car.
- 4. Press the electric inflater pump switch to start the electric inflater pump. Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.
- Turn off the electric inflater pump switch, and disconnect the electric inflater pump hose and the electric inflater pump power cable connector.
- 6. Refit the valve dust cover.

Quick tyre repair



- Tear off the maximum allowable speed sticker and stick it to steering wheel.
- 2. Make sure the electric inflater pump switch is off, and then take out the electric inflater pump power cable connector.
- Tyre repair kit: insert the tyre repair liquid cover into the card slot from the side.
- 4. Loosen the valve dust cover and connect the tyre repair liquid connecting hose to tyre valve.
- 5. Connect the electric inflater pump power cable connector with 12V power supply of the car to energize the pump.
- 6. Press the electric inflater pump switch button.
- Inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label.

- 8. Turn off the electric inflater pump and disconnect the electric inflater pump power cable.
- 9. Tyre repair kit: remove the tyre repair liquid.
- Remove the tyre repair liquid connecting hose from tyre valve and refit the valve dust cover.
- 11. Immediately drive 10 min or 8 km at ≤ 80 km/h speed to allow the sealant to evenly apply and seal the tyre.

⚠ Warning!

- Park the car in a safe place away from traffic. Shift to P gear.
- When repairing tyres on the road, you should enable the hazard warning lamps, wear a reflective safety vest, then exit the car and place warning triangle at specified distance.

⚠ Warning!

When repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- Tyre repair liquid is harmful and should be kept out of the reach of children.
- Prevent tyre repair liquid from splashing into your eyes.
- If you accidentally ingest tyre repair liquid, go to see a doctor immediately.
- If you accidentally come into contact with tyre repair liquid, wash the contact area with soap or water immediately.

Never stand next to the tyre when the electric inflater pump is working. If the tyre is cracked or uneven, turn off the electric inflation pump immediately and contact the Lotus Customer Care Centre for inspection as soon as possible.

After repairing a tyre with tyre repair kit:

- The car speed shall not exceed 80 km/h.
- The driving distance of the vehicle should not exceed 200 km, and go to the Lotus Customer Care Centre as soon as possible to repair or replace the tyres.
- Avoid emergency steering and emergency braking.
- If you perceive unusual vibrations or noises while driving, slow down immediately and stop the car safely.

Caution!

- The electric inflater pump should not work for more than 10 minutes, otherwise it will be damaged due to overheating.
- After tyre inflation, be sure to install the valve dust cover to avoid damage to tyre valve.

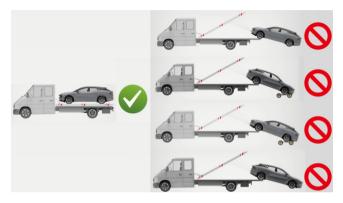
Check tyre pressure

- 1. Connect the electric inflater pump hose to the tyre valve.
- 2. Connect the electric inflater pump power cable connector with 12 V power supply of the car.

- 3. Turn on the electric inflater pump switch and read the tyre pressure on pressure gauge:
 - If the tyre pressure is lower than 1.8 bar, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed, and it is not allowed to continue driving in this case.
 - If the tyre pressure exceeds 1.8 bar, inflate the tyre to the pressure recommended on tyre pressure label. If the tyre pressure is too high, use a bleed valve to permit air to be removed from the tyre.
- Turn off the electric inflater pump switch, and disconnect the electric inflater pump hose and the electric inflater pump power connector.

Having your car towed

Towing method



The towing of a car, if required, must be performed in accordance with local regulations. Do not tow a vehicle with its wheels on ground. When towing a vehicle, power off the vehicle and transfer it to a flatbed tractor truck. The vehicle may be damaged if it is towed by incorrect towing methods or improper towing equipment.

Lotus cars recommends that you seek help from professional roadside assistance personnel for towing.

Caution!

- Before towing the vehicle, please contact the Lotus retailer to confirm if the vehicle has successfully disconnected the lowvoltage power supply. If towing a vehicle without disconnecting the low voltage, it will increase traction resistance and may damage the vehicle's drive motor.
- Given that the car comes with an air suspension system, secure the car by binding the tyres rather than the car's body when towing, and avoid attaching ropes to the wheel rims alone.

Towing procedures

Towing mode

When the vehicle needs to be towed to a platform trailer, the towing mode should be activated first. The specific operation is as follows:

- 1. Ensure to keep the valid key in the vehicle. In case of a card key, it must be placed in the wireless charging sensing area.
- 2. Open and close the driver door once.
- 3. Press and hold the hazard warning lamp switch for more than 7 seconds until the warning lamp on the instrument cluster self-checks (the warning lamp lights up and goes out after a few seconds) once.
- 4. Put the vehicle in N gear.

You can exit towing mode in any of the following ways:

- Shift the gear to Park (P) to lock the vehicle from the outside.
- Shift the gear to Drive (D) or Reverse (R) to start driving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer, no person or object is allowed to be at the rear of the trailer.
- After the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer, please deactivate the towing mode and apply the electronic parking brake (EPB) to ensure the parking safety of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is being towed, the driver and passengers must not stay in the vehicle.

Caution!

- The vehicle must be in towing mode before being towed to a platform trailer.
- During transportation, ensure that the wheels will not rotate.

① Note!

Towing mode is only applicable when the vehicle is towed to a platform trailer.

Use a towing eye

- Open the tailgate of the vehicle and take out the towing ring from the boot storage box.
- 2. Open the cover plate of the towing ring mounting hole, which can be found on the right side of the front and rear bumpers.





- Screw the towing eye in place and continue tightening until the towing eye is fully screwed in and the towing device is attached to the towing eye.
- 4. Before towing, please power off the vehicle, turn on the hazard warning lights, and ensure that the vehicle is locked completely with no one inside.
- Install the towing device onto the towing hook, and then tow the vehicle onto a flathed truck.
- 6. After the vehicle is towed to the designated position on the flatbed truck, use detent blocks and straps to fix the wheels.

Caution!

 When installing the towing ring, be sure to screw it into the limit position to prevent vibration.

- To ensure safety, make sure that the towing direction of the towing device is consistent with the front-and-rear direction of the vehicle as possible when operating as described above.
- As this vehicle is equipped with air suspension, do not use the method of tying the body to fix the vehicle, only use the method of tying the tyre to fix the vehicle. Do not tie the vehicle wheels separately.
- Towing is allowed only when there is no safety risk to the vehicle. In case that the battery pack is deformed, leaks, smokes, etc., you should eliminate safety risks immediately.
- The hazard warning lights must be turned on when towing the vehicle.
- Do not tow the car for long distances when using the towing eye to avoid damaging the vehicle.

① Note!

- Removal of the towing ring can be accomplished by reversing the installation steps.
- If the vehicle is equipped with an electric towing hook, use it to tow another vehicle or allow the vehicle being towed from the rear of the vehicle.
- There is no mounting hole of rear bumper towing ring for vehicles equipped with an electric towing hook.

Getting out of a trapped situation

When your vehicle gets stuck in sand, snow, mud, etc., keeping the following procedures in mind will help you get out of the trouble:

- Observe the area in front of and behind the vehicle to make sure there are no obstructions.
- Turn the steering wheel left and right to rub away the sludge around the front wheels.
- 3. Shift into D or R gear and move the vehicle forward and backwards slowly.
- If you cannot get out of trouble after several attempts, please seek out a professional towing service.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle is driven out of a pit by moving back and forth, it may suddenly rush forwards or backward. During this process, attention must be paid at all times to avoid injury or death.
- Towing requires a slow start, and acceleration shall be performed after the tow rope is tensioned to tow the trapped vehicle.

① Note!

You can place wood blocks, stones or other materials under the front wheels to help increase the adhesive friction.

Emergency rescue procedures

PPE for rescue personnel

This vehicle is driven by high voltage batteries, which may result in worse conditions such as high voltage electricity leakage, damage to battery pack, leakage of chemical liquid, etc. in the event of serious collisions. Therefore, the emergency rescue personnel should wear appropriate protective equipment to ensure personal safety when rescuing on the vehicle.

- Wear safety goggles when operating high-voltage systems.
- Wear 1,000 V insulating gloves when touching high-voltage components.
- Use insulating tools when operating high-voltage components.
- Prepare insulating protective hooks.
- Prepare a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.

⚠ Warning!

A supervision mechanism should be followed when the emergency rescue personnel is operating high-voltage components. It is stipulated that one person supervises and another person operates. It is forbidden for two or more people to work simultaneously. When the operator is working, other personnel should not touch the operator. • The emergency rescue personnel must not wear metal jewellery when performing rescue operations.



Acid and alkali resistant gloves



Insulating protective hook



Fire extinguisher



Fire blanket



High-voltage insulating gloves



Insulating cap



Safety goggles



Insulating shoes



Insulating tape



Insulating tools



① Note!

The insulation tool is divided into five grades according to the heat resistance grade of the insulation material: A, E, B, F and H:

- Grade A: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 105°C; winding temperature rise limit 60 K.
- Grade E: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 120°C; winding temperature rise limit 75 K.
- Grade B: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 130°C; winding temperature rise limit 80 K.
- Grade F: maximum allowable temperature ≤ 155°C; winding temperature rise limit 100 K.
- Grade H: the maximum allowable temperature ≤ 180°C; winding temperature rise limit 125 K.

Release method of high-voltage system

Manual release of MSD

You can deactivate the vehicle high voltage system by the steps below:

1. Stop the vehicle with the shift lever engaged into P.



- 2. Pull twice the bonnet opening handle successively to unlock the bonnet and close all doors and tailgate.
- Open the bonnet, remove and take out the trim panel from the bonnet.



4. Find the low-voltage MSD in bonnet and remove it, and the vehicle will deactivate the high-voltage system automatically.

⚠ Warning!

- Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment when touching any high-voltage components.
- It is forbidden to touch the high-voltage battery components even though the high-voltage system has been released. Be sure to wear appropriate personal protective equipment if it is necessary to operate the high-voltage battery components.
- If the damage is found in the high-voltage components, be sure to wrap the damaged parts with the insulation tapes.

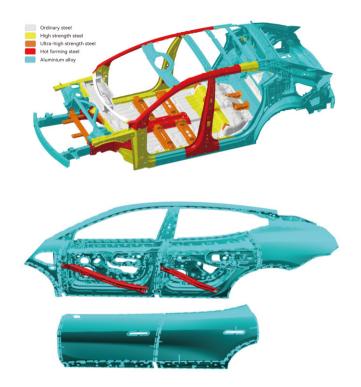
Caution!

- In emergency situations, the orange wiring harness on the MSD can be completely cut off to prevent the wiring harness from being grounded again, and the vehicle will automatically release the high-voltage system.
- In case of a vehicle collision, the high-voltage system will be automatically released.

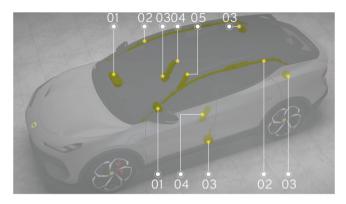
No cutting areas

High strength steel position

If the vehicle body needs to be cut for rescue, be sure to use the appropriate tools for cutting and wear appropriate protective equipment.



Airbag assembly

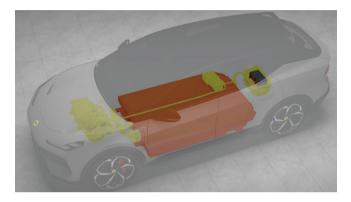


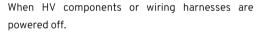
- 1. Front frontal airbag
- 2. Curtain airbag
- 3. Seat belt retractor
- 4. Front side airbag
- 5. Central airbag

To ensure the safety of rescuers, cutting is prohibited when the airbag is not deployed, but it can be done under the following conditions:

- When the front frontal and side airbags and curtain airbags have been deployed.
- When both LV and HV parts of the vehicle are powered off.

No cutting areas







No cutting in the high voltage battery area.



Do not cut the battery.

Rescue of wading vehicle

The extent of damage to wading vehicles may not be obvious, but there is a risk of leakage from high voltage systems. When rescuing wading vehicles, the rescue personnel must wear corresponding protective equipment to avoid injuries or casualties caused by electric shock.

⚠ Warning!

- The rescue personnel must wear appropriate protective equipment before touching high-voltage system components in water to prevent electric shock.
- After the rescue personnel remove the vehicle from the wading area, be sure to wait for the vehicle to dry completely before carrying out corresponding operations to prevent electric shock.

Rescue of vehicle or fire

When a vehicle catches fire, you should immediately determine the firing state. If the fire is small and can be contained, rescue personnel should employ an appropriate fire extinguishing method like dry powder fire extinguisher, carbon dioxide fire extinguisher, or dry sand, to contain the flames.

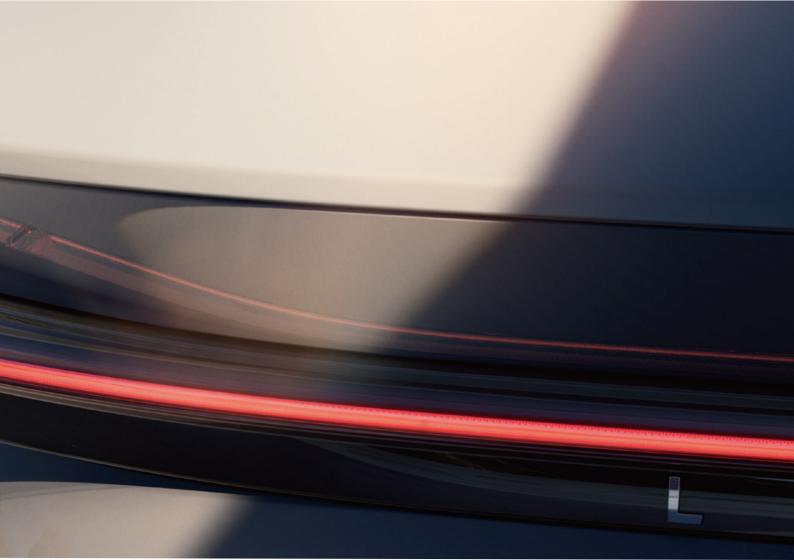
If the fire is large or the battery is found to be severely squeezed or bent, the rescue personnel should contain the flames with large amounts of water without a break. Meanwhile, the rescue personnel should keep surrounding combustibles away from the burning vehicle as soon as possible so as to prevent the fire from spreading.

⚠ Warning!

- When the vehicle catches fire, the passengers in the vehicle should leave the vehicle as soon as possible, call the rescue telephone according to the scene situation, and inform the rescue personnel that the vehicle on fire is a pure electric vehicle equipped with high-voltage components.
- If the rescue personnel find that there are passengers in the vehicle and the door cannot be opened during rescue, they can use sharp and hard tools to knock on the edge of the glass of the door to help the passengers trapped in the vehicle break the window to escape.

! Caution!

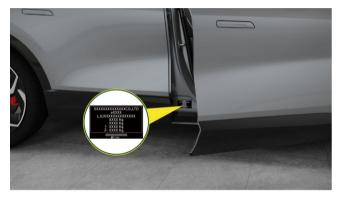
Fires in high-voltage components must be extinguished using a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium batteries.





Vehicle identification

Vehicle nameplate



Vehicle nameplate location

The vehicle nameplate is located below the right B-pillar and can be viewed when the front right door is opened.

The vehicle nameplate shows vehicle-related information.

VIN location

The VIN is the legal identification mark of a vehicle.



VIN located in the lower left corner of the windscreen



The VIN at the cross member of the front right seat

The VIN at the cross member of the front right seat, covered by carpet, is partially removable.

VINs can also be found at the following locations:

- Left side of bonnet inner panel
- Below the B-pillar on the right
- Front right door inner panel
- Right rear door inner panel
- Right side of boot lit inner panel
- Left wheel housing side beam

Caution!

Sratching, erasing and covering up, concealing, altering or painting the VIN is prohibited.

How to read VIN

The VIN can be read by diagnostic tools. The specific steps are as follows:

1. Connect the on-board diagnostic (OBD-II) socket;



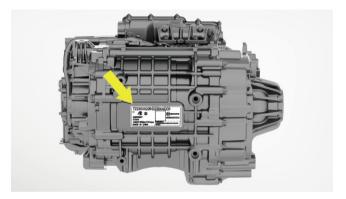
- Contact the Lotus retailer to authorize the diagnostic system for on-board diagnostic (OBD-II) sockets;
- 3. Start the vehicle;
- 4. The diagnostic system automatically reads the VIN.

Caution!

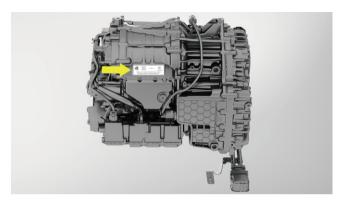
Do not connect other devices to the OBD-II socket. Unauthorized third parties may gain access to vehicle data, resulting in degraded performance of safety-related systems. Only equipment authorized by the Lotus retailer is allowed to connect to OBD-II sockets.

Drive motor model and number

The vehicle drive motor model and number are located on the drive motor label, on the right side of the bonnet cover plate and on the left side of the tailgate.



Drive motor type 1 mark label position



Drive motor type 2 mark label position



Front drive motor label location



Rear drive motor label location

Microwave window



The microwave window is fixed horizontally in the centre, vertically upward position of the front windscreen. Information about the vehicle is stored in the microwave window. Please keep the front windscreen clean and prevent foreign objects from blocking the microwave window.

L Caution!

- It is forbidden to block the microwave window, otherwise it cannot be recognized by the electronic identification device outside the car.
- Avoid sticking the required traffic signs onto microwave window.

Technical parameter

Dimension parameters

Vehicle outline dimensions		
Length (mm) 5,103		
Width(mm)		2,019
	Wheel size: R20	1,630
Height(mm)	Wheel size: R22*/R23*	1,636

Vehicle chassis parameters			
	Wheel size: R20	1,708	
Front track(mm)	Wheel size: R22*/ R23* 1,706		
	Wheel size: R20	1,720	
Rear track(mm)	Wheel size: R22*/ R23*	1,684	
Wheelba	3,019		

Vehicle chassis parameters		
Front overhang(mm)	980	
Rear overhang (mm)	1,104	

Performance parameters

Performance parameters				
Front electric engine model TZ230XS225 TZ230XS225				
Rear electric engine model	TZ230XS225	TZ264XY000		
Maximum design speed (km/h)	258	265		
Maximum climbing degree	40%	40%		

Drive motor parameters

Drive motor parameters		
Motor type	TZ230XS225	TZ264XY000

Drive motor parameters				
Driving type	4x4(Full-time driver)	4x4(Full-time driver)		
Rated power (kW)	70	180		
Rated speed(rpm)	5,000	8,595		
Rated torque (N.m)	135	200		
Peak power(kW)	225	450		
maximum speed (rpm)	17,000	14,000		
Peak torque (N.m)	355	630		

Weight parameters

Vehicle mass parameters					
	Seat	Vehicle	Unlade n mass (maxim		um total s (kg)
Vehicle model	capacity (person)	unladen mass (kg)	um total mass) (kg)	Front axle	Rear axle

Vehicle mass parameters					
LBMESEL1C 50000	5				
LBMESEL1C 50010	5	2,565	2,980	1,470	1,730
LBMESEL1C 50040	5				
LBMESEL1C 51020	5	2 615			
LBMESEL1C 41020	4	2,615			
LBMESEL3C 51030	5	2445			
LBMESER3 C41030	4	2,645	3,100	1,470	1,810
LBMESEL1C 51040	5	2,595	3,100	1,470	1,010
LBMESEL1C 41040	4				
LBMESEL3C 51050	5	2,625			
LBMESEL3C 41050	4	2,025			

	Vehicle mass parameters				
LBMESEL1C 52161	5	2,715	2,715		1,850
LBMESEL1C 42161	4			1,470	
LBMESEL3C 52171	5	2,745			
LBMESEL3C 42171	4				
LBMESEL3C 52181	5	2.725			
LBMESEL3C 42181	4	2,725			

High voltage battery parameters

High voltage battery parameters		
Types Ternary lithium ion battery		
Total storage capacity (kWh)	112	
Rated voltage (V)	708	

High voltage battery parameters			
Rated capacity (Ah)	158		
Cell dimension (mm)	(44,22±1) × (203,33±1) × (117.96±1)		
Cell weight (kg)	2.45±0.3/5.5±0.6		
Outline dimension of assembly (mm)	2,208×1,554×155		
Assembly weight (kg)	665/1,466		

Seat parameters

5 seats			
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear middle seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment
Set seat fore and aft position (mm)	Adjust forward by 202.8, and adjust backward by 57.2	Not adjustable	Not adjustable
Set backrest	Fold forward by 28, and adjust backward by 45	Fold forward by 95, and adjust backward by 7	Fold forward by 95, and adjust backward by 7

	5 seats				
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear middle seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment		
angle status (°)					
Seat headrest adjustmen t (mm)	Adjust up by 40	Adjust up by 64.5	Adjust up by 64		
Set seat height position (mm)	Adjust up by 32.5, and adjust down by 32.5	Not adjustable	Not adjustable		
Set seat cushion tilt angle status (°)	Adjust up by 5.2, and adjust down by 5.4	Not adjustable	Not adjustable		

4 seats*			
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment	
Set seat fore and aft position (mm)	Adjust forward by 202.8, and adjust backward by 57.2	Adjust forward by 60	

	4 seats*	
Item	Front seat adjustment	Rear side seats adjustment
Set backrest angle status (°)	Fold forward by 28, and adjust backward by 45	Fold forward by 26.7, and adjust backward by 10
Seat headrest adjustment (mm)	Adjust up by 40	Adjust up by 40
Set seat height position (mm)	Adjust up by 32.5, and adjust down by 32.5	Not adjustable
Set seat cushion tilt angle status (°)	Adjust up by 5.2, and adjust down by 5.4	Adjust up by 5.2, and adjust down by 5.4

Wheel alignment parameters

	Wheel alignment paramet	ers
	Wheel camber (')	-36±25
Front wheel	Inclination angle (')	4.8±3
WIICCI	Back inclination angle of kingpin	4.9±0.6

Wheel alignment parameters			
	Inside steer angle (°)	40.6±2	
	Outside steer angle (°)	32.8±2	
Rear	Wheel camber (')	-45±20	
wheel	Inclination angle (')	13±3	

Rim and tyre specifications

Rim and tyre specifications							
Specification		F:25 5/5 0 R20	R:28 5/4 5 R20	F:27 5/4 0 R22 *	R:31 5/3 5 R22 *	F:27 5/3 5 R23	R:31 5/3 0 R23 *
Pressure (bar)	Half load	2.8	2.8	2.6	2.6	2.9	2.9
	Fully loaded	3.0	3.0	2.8	3.0	3.1	3.4
Wheel rim		8.5J × 20	9.5J × 20	9.0J × 22	11.0J × 22	9.0J × 23	11.0J × 23
Wheel dynamic balance(i	Inner side of front wheel	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10	_

	Rim and tyre specifications						
nner/ outer residual unbalanc e)(g)	Outer side of front wheel	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10	-
	Inner side of rear wheel	_	≤10	-	≤10	_	≤10
	Outer side of rear wheel	_	≤10	_	≤10	_	≤10
Whe	eel offset	ET3 2	ET3 0	ET3 3	ET4 8	ET3 3	ET4 8

⚠ Warning!

- Due to differences in wheel assembly, do not change the position of any wheel assembly to avoid vehicle damage or accidents. For replacement, please go to the Lotus retailer.
- Driving on an under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tire failure.

Braking parameters

	Braking parameters				
Braking system (named after current number of caliper pistons)	4-piston braking system	6-piston braking system*	10-piston braking system*		
Туре	Hydraulic braking	Hydraulic braking	Hydraulic braking		
Assist type	Electric assist	Electric assist	Electric assist		
Brake pedal free travel (mm)	≤20	≤20	≤20		
Standard thickness of front brake disc (mm)	34	40	40		
Minimum safe	32	38	When the carbon content or weight		

	Braking parameters				
thickness of front brake disc (mm)			is below the minimum value indicated on the part, replace the brake discs		
Standard thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	29	29	32		
Minimum safe thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	27	27	When the carbon content or weight is below the minimum value indicated on the part, replace the brake discs		
Standard thickness of front brake pad (excluding steel back) (mm)	About 8.2	About 8.6	About 12.2		
Minimum safe thickness of front	2.7	2.7	3.2		

Braking parameters				
brake pad (excluding steel back) (mm)				
Standard thickness of rear			Service brake pads: about 11	
brake pad (excluding steel back) (mm)	About 9.5	About 9.5	Parking brake pad: about 5.5	
Minimum safe thickness			Service brake pads: 3	
of rear brake pad (excluding steel back) (mm)	2.7	2.7	Parking brake pad: 1.7	
Parking brake type	Electronic parking brake (EPB)	Electronic parking brake (EPB)	Electronic parking brake (EPB)	

Fluid specification and capacity

Fluid specification and capacity				
Name	Мо	del	Filling amount	
Transmission lubricant	TOTAL F2	0-03863K	1L	
Drive motor Iubricant	Shell E-Fluids E6 i DHTF		2.8±0.1L(Transmissio n side);2.2±0.1L(Drive motor side)	
A/C refrigerant	R-1234yf		900±20g	
Brake fluid	BASF HN 404(Class 6)	4-piston braking system/6- piston braking system*	850±30ml	
	6) 10-pisto	10-piston braking system*	750±30mI	

INDEX

Numerics		В	
12V power supply ·····	167	Battery	328
A		Before you drive ·····	19
		Blind spot detection (BSD)	252
Acoustic vehicle alerting system	199	Bluetooth settings	287
Active grille shutter (AGS)	208	Bonnet ·····	82
Active rear spoiler*	199	Brake assist system (BAS)	262
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	219	Brake fluid · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	333
Air outlet	159	Braking parameters ·····	399
Air suspension ······	201	Buttons on steering wheel	90
Airbag deployment conditions	35	C	
Android Auto	287		
Anti roll-over program (ARP)	262	Change of ownership	32
Apple CarPlay · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	290	Charging cable ·····	53
AUTO HOLD	213	Charging guidance ······	58
Automatic speed limit alarm (ASLA)	246	Charging preparation	53
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)	235	Child passenger safety guide	37
Autonomous parking assist (APA)* ·····	269	Child safety lock ·····	47

Child safety seat ·····	38	Electrical pad wear indication (EPWI) ·····	263
Comfortable brake stop (CST) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	257	Electronic parking brake(EPB) ·····	214
Contact Lotus ······	15	Electronic stability control (ESC)	258
Coolant ·····	332	Emergency call ·····	346
D		Energy recovery	212
		Evasive maneuver assist (EMA)*	239
Daily maintenance	317	Event data recorder (EDR)	14
Desktop	283	Exterior maintenance	337
Dimension parameters	394	External lighting control	107
Disabling of passenger front airbag	36	F	
Door opening warning (DOW) ·····	255	<u>'</u>	
Doors	69	Fluid specification and capacity	400
Drive mode	204	Four-zone air-conditioner control system	148
Drive motor model and number	392	Front centre armrest ·····	180
Drive motor parameters	394	Front cross traffic alert (FCTA)	24
Driver fatigue detection	275	Front of vehicle	23
Driver's tools	374	Front seat adjustment	133
Driving mode	207	Function of airbag ·····	33
E		Function of seat belt ······	28
<u> </u>		Fuse ·····	360
Ejection start*	197		

G		Interior maintenance	340
Garage Garage door opener(HomeLink)* Guidance for traffic accidents	284 131 346	Internal Internal lighting control J	24 113
Н		Jump startings	358
Hazard warning light ·····	349	K	
Head-up display (HUD)	104 396 350	Key introductionL	6
Highway assist (HWA)* Hill descent control (HDC) Hill start assist (HSA) How to read VIN	227260262391	Lane keep assist(LKA) Life detection and care Location of airbag Lotus intelligent dynamic control(LIDC) Lotus security system V	243 48 35 263 49
Indicators and Warning Lamps ·····	98	M	
Inside mirror adjustment	130 336 94	Microwave window	393 293

N		Power on/off ·····	192
Navigation Necessity of maintenance Network settings	300 317 285	PPE for rescue personnel	38 ⁻ 13
No cutting areas Notes to users	384 280	Quick temporary tyre repair	374
o		R	
OTA system upgrade ······OTA system upgrade operation ·····OTA system upgrade ·····OTA system upgrade operation ······OTA system upgrade operation ······OTA system upgrade operation ······OTA system upgrade operation ·······OTA system upgrade operation ····································	15 309 120	Radio information Rear centre armrest Rear collision warning (RCW) Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) Rear display	18 250 253 313
Panoramic sunroof* ······	161	Rear of vehicle	23 138
Parking assist (PA)* ·····	265	Record of ownership change	322
Parking comfort ·····	186	Reflective vest ······	349
Performance parameters	394	Release method of high-voltage system	383
Phone ·····	298	Remote parking assist (RPA)* ······	273
Pollen filter ·····	335	Rescue of vehicle or fire	386
Post impact control (PIC) ·····	265	Rescue of wading vehicle	386

Rim and tyre specifications	398	Storage and maintenance	327
Run-in period ····································		Storage device ·····	
		Sun visors and vanity mirrors	168
		Sunroof ·····	161
Safe parking ·····	211	System application ·····	293
Scheduled maintenance	318	т	
Seasonal tyres	331	<u>'</u>	
Seat heating ·····	145	Tailgate ·····	84
Seat parameters		Tire introduction	19
Seat ventilation*		Towing method ·····	378
Sensors and cameras	214	Towing mode*	183
Service record ·····	324	Towing procedures ·····	378
Set up ·····	305	Traction control system (TCS) ·····	260
Shift operation ·····	195	Tyre chains ·····	331
Shortcut panel	283	Tyre pressure monitoring system	209
Sound ·····	295	Tyre wear ·····	330
Start ·····	194	U	
Start-up guidance	282		
Steering mode	207	USB-C port ·····	166
Steering wheel	90	User notice ······	12
Steering Wheel Heating	93	Using the seat belts correctly	29

Vehicle accessories	14
Vehicle lifting	35
Vehicle nameplate ·····	390
Vehicle scrapping	13
Vehicle use preference function	28
VIN location ·····	390
Visual parking assist (VPA)	26
Voice ·····	29!
W	
Warning triangle ·····	349
Warranty coverage	319
Warranty period ·····	319
Weight parameters	39
Wheel alignment parameters	39
Windows ·····	78
Windscreen washer fluid	334
Wiper control ·····	11
Wireless charging ······	163

LOTUS®